

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

SCHEDULES

SCHEDULE 1

Section 9(2)

THE NATIONAL HEALTH SERVICE COMMISSIONING BOARD

Commencement Information

- I1** [Sch. 1](#) partly in force; [Sch. 1](#) in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see [s. 306\(1\)\(d\)](#)
- I2** [Sch. 1](#) in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [art. 3\(2\)\(3\)](#))
- I3** [Sch. 1](#) in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

“SCHEDULE A1

Section 1H(4)

THE NATIONAL HEALTH SERVICE COMMISSIONING BOARD

Status

- 1 (1) The Board is not to be regarded as a servant or agent of the Crown, or as enjoying any status, privilege or immunity of the Crown.
- (2) The Board's property is not to be regarded as property of, or property held on behalf of, the Crown.

Membership

- 2 (1) The Board is to consist of—
 - (a) a chair appointed by the Secretary of State,
 - (b) at least five other members so appointed, and
 - (c) the chief executive and other members appointed in accordance with paragraph 3.
- (2) In this Schedule—
 - (a) references to non-executive members of the Board are references to the members appointed in accordance with sub-paragraph (1)(a) and (b), and
 - (b) references to executive members of the Board are references to the other members.
- (3) The number of executive members must be less than the number of non-executive members.

The chief executive and other executive members: appointment and status

- 3 (1) The chief executive and the other executive members of the Board are to be appointed by the non-executive members.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2) A person may not be appointed as chief executive without the consent of the Secretary of State.
- (3) The chief executive and the other executive members are to be employees of the Board.
- (4) The first chief executive of the Board is to be appointed by the Secretary of State.

Non-executive members: tenure

- 4 (1) A person holds and vacates office as a non-executive member of the Board in accordance with that person's terms of appointment.
- (2) A person may at any time resign from office as a non-executive member by giving notice to the Secretary of State.
- (3) The Secretary of State may at any time remove a person from office as a non-executive member on any of the following grounds—
 - (a) incapacity,
 - (b) misbehaviour, or
 - (c) failure to carry out his or her duties as a non-executive member.
- (4) The Secretary of State may suspend a person from office as a non-executive member if it appears to the Secretary of State that there are or may be grounds to remove that person from office under sub-paragraph (3).
- (5) A person may not be appointed as a non-executive member for a period of more than four years.
- (6) A person who ceases to be a non-executive member is eligible for re-appointment.

Suspension of non-executive members

- 5 (1) This paragraph applies where a person is suspended under paragraph 4(4).
- (2) The Secretary of State must give notice of the decision to the person; and the suspension takes effect on receipt by the person of the notice.
- (3) The notice may be—
 - (a) delivered in person (in which case the person is taken to receive it when it is delivered), or
 - (b) sent by first class post to the person's last known address (in which case, the person is taken to receive it on the third day after the day on which it is posted).
- (4) The initial period of suspension must not exceed six months.
- (5) The Secretary of State may at any time review the suspension.
- (6) The Secretary of State—
 - (a) must review the suspension if requested in writing by the person to do so, but
 - (b) need not review the suspension less than three months after the beginning of the initial period of suspension.
- (7) Following a review during a period of suspension, the Secretary of State may—
 - (a) revoke the suspension, or

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) suspend the person for another period of not more than six months from the expiry of the current period.
- (8) The Secretary of State must revoke the suspension if the Secretary of State —
 - (a) decides that there are no grounds to remove the person from office under paragraph 4(3), or
 - (b) decides that there are grounds to do so but does not remove the person from office under that provision.
- 6 (1) Where a person is suspended from office as the chair under paragraph 4(4), the Secretary of State may appoint a non-executive member as interim chair to exercise the chair's functions.
- (2) Appointment as interim chair is for a term not exceeding the shorter of—
 - (a) the period ending with either—
 - (i) the appointment of a new chair, or
 - (ii) the revocation or expiry of the existing chair's suspension, and
 - (b) the remainder of the interim chair's term as a non-executive member.
- (3) A person who ceases to be the interim chair is eligible for re-appointment.

Payment of non-executive members

- 7 (1) The Board must pay to its non-executive members such remuneration as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (2) The Board must pay or make provision for the payment of such pensions, allowances or gratuities as the Secretary of State may determine to or in respect of any person who is or has been a non-executive member of the Board.
- (3) If a person ceases to be a non-executive member and the Secretary of State decides that there are exceptional circumstances which mean that the person should be compensated, the Board must pay compensation to the person of such amount as the Secretary of State may, with the approval of the Treasury, determine.

Staff

- 8 The Board may appoint such persons to be employees of the Board as it considers appropriate.
- 9 (1) Employees of the Board are to be paid such remuneration and allowances as the Board may determine.
- (2) Employees of the Board are to be appointed on such other terms and conditions as the Board may determine.
- (3) The Board may pay or make provision for the payment of such pensions, allowances or gratuities as it may determine to or in respect of any person who is or has been an employee of the Board.
- (4) Before making a determination as to remuneration, pensions, allowances or gratuities for the purposes of this paragraph, the Board must obtain the approval of the Secretary of State to its policy on the matter.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Committees

- 10 (1) The Board may appoint such committees and sub-committees as it considers appropriate.
- (2) A committee or sub-committee may consist of or include persons who are not members or employees of the Board.
- (3) The Board may pay such remuneration and allowances as it determines to any person who—
- (a) is a member of a committee or a sub-committee, but
 - (b) is not an employee of the Board,
- whether or not that person is a non-executive member of the Board.

Trust funds and trustees

- 11 (1) The Secretary of State may by order provide for the appointment of trustees for the Board to hold property on trust—
- (a) for the general or any specific purposes of the Board, or
 - (b) for any purposes relating to the health service in England.
- (2) An order under sub-paragraph (1) may—
- (a) make provision as to the persons by whom trustees must be appointed and generally as to the method of their appointment,
 - (b) make any appointment subject to such conditions as may be specified in the order (including conditions requiring the consent of the Secretary of State),
 - (c) make provision as to the number of trustees to be appointed, including provision under which that number may from time to time be determined by the Secretary of State after consultation with such persons as the Secretary of State considers appropriate, and
 - (d) make provision with respect to the term of office of any trustee and his or her removal from office.
- (3) Where trustees have been appointed by virtue of sub-paragraph (1), the Secretary of State may by order provide for the transfer of any trust property from the Board to the trustees.

Procedure

- 12 (1) The Board may regulate its own procedure.
- (2) The validity of any act of the Board is not affected by any vacancy among the members or by any defect in the appointment of any member.

Exercise of functions

- 13 The Board may arrange for the exercise of any of its functions on its behalf by—
- (a) any non-executive member,
 - (b) any employee (including any executive member), or
 - (c) a committee or sub-committee.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Provision of information to Secretary of State

- 14 (1) The Secretary of State may require the Board to provide the Secretary of State with such information as the Secretary of State considers it necessary to have for the purposes of the functions of the Secretary of State in relation to the health service.
- (2) The information must be provided in such form, and at such time or within such period, as the Secretary of State may require.

Accounts

- 15 (1) The Board must keep proper accounts and proper records in relation to the accounts.
- (2) The Secretary of State may, with the approval of the Treasury, give directions to the Board as to—
- (a) the content and form of its accounts, and
 - (b) the methods and principles to be applied in the preparation of its accounts.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2) the reference to accounts includes a reference to the Board's consolidated annual accounts prepared under paragraph 16 and any interim accounts prepared by virtue of paragraph 17.
- (4) The chief executive of the Board is to be its accounting officer.

Annual accounts

- 16 (1) The Board must prepare consolidated annual accounts in respect of each financial year.
- (2) The consolidated annual accounts must contain—
- (a) the Board's annual accounts, and
 - (b) a consolidation of the Board's annual accounts and the annual accounts of each clinical commissioning group.
- (3) The Board must send copies of the consolidated annual accounts to—
- (a) the Secretary of State, and
 - (b) the Comptroller and Auditor General,
- within such period after the end of the financial year to which the accounts relate as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (4) The Comptroller and Auditor General must—
- (a) examine, certify and report on the consolidated annual accounts, and
 - (b) lay copies of the accounts and the report on them before Parliament.
- (5) In this paragraph, “financial year” includes the period which begins with the day on which the Board is established and ends on the following 31 March.

Interim Accounts

- 17 (1) The Secretary of State may, with the approval of the Treasury, direct the Board to prepare accounts in respect of such period or periods as may be specified in the direction (“interim accounts”).
- (2) The interim accounts in respect of any period must contain—
- (a) the Board's accounts in respect of that period, and

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) a consolidation of the Board's accounts in respect of that period and any accounts of clinical commissioning groups in respect of that period which are prepared by virtue of paragraph 17(3) of Schedule 1A.
- (3) The Board must send copies of any interim accounts to—
- (a) the Secretary of State, and
 - (b) if the Secretary of State so directs, the Comptroller and Auditor General,
- within such period as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (4) The Comptroller and Auditor General must—
- (a) examine, certify and report on any interim accounts sent by virtue of sub-paragraph (3)(b),
 - (b) if the Secretary of State so directs, send a copy of the report on the accounts to the Secretary of State, and
 - (c) if the Secretary of State so directs, lay copies of the accounts and the report on them before Parliament.

Seal and evidence

- 18 (1) The application of the Board's seal must be authenticated by the signature of any member of the Board or any other person who has been authorised (generally or specially) for that purpose.
- (2) A document purporting to be duly executed under the Board's seal or to be signed on its behalf must be received in evidence and, unless the contrary is proved, taken to be so executed or signed.”

SCHEDULE 2

Section 25(2)

CLINICAL COMMISSIONING GROUPS

Commencement Information

- I4** Sch. 2 partly in force; Sch. 2 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)
- I5** Sch. 2 in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by S.I. 2012/1831, art. 2(2) (with art. 9)
- I6** Sch. 2 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

“SCHEDULE 1A

Sections 14B(6), 14D(2) and 14I(4)

CLINICAL COMMISSIONING GROUPS

PART 1

CONSTITUTION OF CLINICAL COMMISSIONING GROUPS

General

- 1 A clinical commissioning group must have a constitution.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- 2 (1) The constitution must specify—
 - (a) the name of the clinical commissioning group,
 - (b) the members of the group, and
 - (c) the area of the group.
- (2) The name of the group must comply with such requirements as may be prescribed.
- 3 (1) The constitution must specify the arrangements made by the clinical commissioning group for the discharge of its functions (including its functions in determining the terms and conditions of its employees).
- (2) The arrangements may include provision—
 - (a) for the appointment of committees or sub-committees of the clinical commissioning group, and
 - (b) for any such committees to consist of or include persons other than members or employees of the clinical commissioning group.
- (3) The arrangements may include provision for any functions of the clinical commissioning group to be exercised on its behalf by—
 - (a) any of its members or employees,
 - (b) its governing body, or
 - (c) a committee or sub-committee of the group.
- 4 (1) The constitution must specify the procedure to be followed by the clinical commissioning group in making decisions.
- (2) The constitution must also specify the arrangements made by the clinical commissioning group for securing that there is transparency about the decisions of the group and the manner in which they are made.
- 5 The constitution must specify the arrangements made by the clinical commissioning group for discharging its duties under section 14O(1) to (4).
- 6 The provision made by virtue of paragraphs 3 and 4 must secure that there is effective participation by each member of the clinical commissioning group in the exercise of the group's functions.

Governing bodies of clinical commissioning groups

- 7 (1) The constitution must specify the arrangements made by the clinical commissioning group for the discharge of the functions of its governing body.
- (2) The arrangements—
 - (a) must include provision for the appointment of the audit committee and remuneration committee of the governing body, and
 - (b) may include provision for the appointment of other committees or sub-committees of the governing body.
- (3) Arrangements under sub-paragraph (2)(a) may include provision for the audit committee to include individuals who are not members of the governing body.
- (4) Arrangements under sub-paragraph (2)(b) may include provision for a committee or sub-committee to include individuals who are not members of the governing body but are—
 - (a) members of the clinical commissioning group, or

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (b) individuals of a description specified in the constitution.
- (5) The arrangements may include provision for any functions of the governing body to be exercised on its behalf by—
 - (a) any committee or sub-committee of the governing body,
 - (b) a member of the governing body,
 - (c) a member of the clinical commissioning group who is an individual (but is not a member of the governing body), or
 - (d) an individual of a description specified in the constitution.
- (6) In this paragraph, references to the functions of the governing body of a clinical commissioning group include references to the functions of the clinical commissioning group which are exercisable by the governing body under arrangements specified in the constitution by virtue of paragraph 3(3).
- 8 (1) The constitution must specify the procedure to be followed by the governing body in making decisions.
- (2) The constitution must also specify the arrangements made by the clinical commissioning group for securing that there is transparency about the decisions of the governing body and the manner in which they are made.
- (3) The provision made under sub-paragraph (2) must include provision for meetings of governing bodies to be open to the public, except where the clinical commissioning group considers that it would not be in the public interest to permit members of the public to attend a meeting or part of a meeting.

Supplemental

- 9 In addition to the provision authorised or required to be included under this Part of this Schedule, the constitution may make further provision.

PART 2

FURTHER PROVISION ABOUT CLINICAL COMMISSIONING GROUPS

Status

- 10 (1) A clinical commissioning group is a body corporate.
- (2) A clinical commissioning group is not to be regarded as a servant or agent of the Crown or as enjoying any status, privilege or immunity of the Crown.
- (3) The property of a clinical commissioning group is not to be regarded as property of, or property held on behalf of, the Crown.

Staff

- 11 (1) A clinical commissioning group may appoint such persons to be employees of the group as it considers appropriate.
- (2) A clinical commissioning group must—

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) pay its employees remuneration and travelling or other allowances in accordance with determinations made by its governing body under section 14L(3)(a), and
 - (b) employ them on such other terms and conditions as it may determine.
- (3) A clinical commissioning group may, for or in respect of such of its employees as it may determine, make arrangements for providing pensions, allowances or gratuities.
- (4) Such arrangements may include the establishment and administration, by the clinical commissioning group or otherwise, of one or more pension schemes.
- (5) The arrangements that may be made under sub-paragraph (3) include arrangements for the provision of pensions, allowances or gratuities by way of compensation to or in respect of any of the clinical commissioning group's employees who suffer loss of office or employment or loss or diminution of emoluments.

Accountable officer

- 12 (1) A clinical commissioning group must have an accountable officer.
- (2) The accountable officer is to be appointed by the Board.
- (3) The Board may appoint a person to be the accountable officer for more than one clinical commissioning group (and in the following provisions of this paragraph such an appointment is referred to as a “joint appointment”).
- (4) The accountable officer may be—
- (a) an individual who is a member of the clinical commissioning group or of any body that is a member of the group or, in the case of a joint appointment, an individual who is a member of any of the groups in question or of any body that is a member of any of those groups, or
 - (b) an employee of the group or of any member of the group or, in the case of a joint appointment, an employee of any of the groups in question or of any member of those groups.
- (5) If the accountable officer is not an employee of the clinical commissioning group or, in the case of a joint appointment, of any of the groups in question, the group or any of the groups may pay remuneration and travelling or other allowances to the accountable officer in accordance with determinations made by its governing body under section 14L(3)(a).
- (6) A clinical commissioning group may, for or in respect of its accountable officer, make arrangements for providing pensions, allowances or gratuities.
- (7) The arrangements that may be made under sub-paragraph (6) include arrangements for the provision of pensions, allowances or gratuities by way of compensation to or in respect of the accountable officer where the officer suffers loss of office or loss or diminution of emoluments.
- (8) Where a clinical commissioning group has, by virtue of paragraph 11(4), established a pension scheme, the arrangements that may be made under sub-paragraph (6) include arrangements for the accountable officer to be a member of the scheme.
- (9) The accountable officer is responsible for ensuring that the clinical commissioning group or, in the case of a joint appointment, each of the groups in question—
- (a) complies with its obligations under—

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (i) sections 14Q and 14R,
 - (ii) sections 223H to 223J,
 - (iii) paragraphs 17 to 19 of this Schedule, and
 - (iv) any other provision of this Act specified in a document published by the Board for the purposes of this sub-paragraph, and
- (b) exercises its functions in a way which provides good value for money.

Remuneration etc for members of governing bodies

- 13 (1) A clinical commissioning group may pay members of its governing body such remuneration and travelling or other allowances as it considers appropriate.
- (2) A clinical commissioning group may, for or in respect of such members of its governing body as it may determine, make arrangements for providing pensions, allowances or gratuities.
- (3) Such arrangements may include the establishment and administration, by the clinical commissioning group or otherwise, of one or more pension schemes.
- (4) The arrangements that may be made under sub-paragraph (2) include arrangements for the provision of pensions, allowances or gratuities by way of compensation to or in respect of any members of the governing body who suffer loss or diminution of emoluments.
- (5) Where a clinical commissioning group has, by virtue of paragraph 11(4), established a pension scheme, the arrangements that may be made under sub-paragraph (2) include arrangements for members of the governing body to be members of the scheme.
- (6) Sub-paragraph (2) does not apply to members of the governing body who are—
- (a) members or employees of the clinical commissioning group, or
 - (b) members or employees of a body that is a member of the clinical commissioning group.

Additional powers in respect of payment of allowances

- 14 A clinical commissioning group may pay such travelling or other allowances as it considers appropriate to any of the following—
- (a) members of the clinical commissioning group who are individuals;
 - (b) individuals authorised to act on behalf of a member of the clinical commissioning group in dealings between the member and the group;
 - (c) members of any committee or sub-committee of the clinical commissioning group or its governing body.

Trust funds and trustees

- 15 (1) The Secretary of State may by order provide for the appointment of trustees for a clinical commissioning group to hold property on trust—
- (a) for the general or any specific purposes of the group, or
 - (b) for any purposes relating to the health service in England.
- (2) An order under sub-paragraph (1) may—
- (a) make provision as to the persons by whom trustees must be appointed and generally as to the method of their appointment,

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) make any appointment subject to such conditions as may be specified in the order (including conditions requiring the consent of the Secretary of State),
 - (c) make provision as to the number of trustees to be appointed, including provision under which that number may from time to time be determined by the Secretary of State after consultation with such persons as the Secretary of State considers appropriate, and
 - (d) make provision with respect to the term of office of any trustee and his or her removal from office.
- (3) Where trustees have been appointed by virtue of sub-paragraph (1), the Secretary of State may by order provide for the transfer of any trust property from the clinical commissioning group to the trustees.

Externally financed development agreements

- 16 (1) The powers of a clinical commissioning group include power to enter into externally financed development agreements.
- (2) For the purposes of this paragraph, an agreement is an externally financed development agreement if it is certified as such in writing by the Secretary of State.
- (3) The Secretary of State may give a certificate under this paragraph if—
- (a) in the Secretary of State's opinion the purpose or main purpose of the agreement is the provision of services or facilities in connection with the discharge by a clinical commissioning group of any of its functions, and
 - (b) a person proposes to make a loan to, or provide any other form of finance for, another party in connection with the agreement.
- (4) If a clinical commissioning group enters into an externally financed development agreement it may also, in connection with that agreement, enter into an agreement with a person who falls within sub-paragraph (3)(b) in relation to the externally financed development agreement.
- (5) In sub-paragraph (3)(b) “another party” means any party to the agreement other than the clinical commissioning group.
- (6) The fact that an agreement made by a clinical commissioning group has not been certified under this paragraph does not affect its validity.

Accounts and audits

- 17 (1) A clinical commissioning group must keep proper accounts and proper records in relation to the accounts.
- (2) A clinical commissioning group must prepare annual accounts in respect of each financial year.
- (3) The Board may, with the approval of the Secretary of State, direct a clinical commissioning group to prepare accounts in respect of such period or periods as may be specified in the direction.
- (4) The Board may, with the approval of the Secretary of State, give directions to a clinical commissioning group as to—
- (a) the methods and principles according to which its annual or other accounts must be prepared, and

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (b) the form and content of such accounts.
- (5) The annual accounts and, if the Board so directs, accounts prepared by virtue of sub-paragraph (3) must be audited in accordance with the Audit Commission Act 1998 by an auditor or auditors appointed in accordance with arrangements made by the Board for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (6) The Comptroller and Auditor General may examine—
 - (a) the annual accounts and any records relating to them, and
 - (b) any report on them by the auditor or auditors.
- (7) A clinical commissioning group must send its audited annual accounts, and any audited accounts prepared by it by virtue of sub-paragraph (3), to the Board by no later than the date specified in a direction by the Board.
- (8) The Board may direct a clinical commissioning group to send its unaudited annual accounts, and any unaudited accounts prepared by it by virtue of sub-paragraph (3), to the Board by no later than the date specified in a direction by the Board.
- (9) For the purposes of this paragraph “financial year” includes the period which begins on the day the clinical commissioning group is established and ends on the following 31 March.

Provision of financial information to Board

- 18 (1) The Board may direct a clinical commissioning group to supply it with such information relating to its accounts or to its income or expenditure, or its use of resources, as may be specified in the direction.
- (2) The power conferred by sub-paragraph (1) includes power to direct a clinical commissioning group to supply the Board with—
 - (a) estimates of its future income or expenditure or its future use of resources;
 - (b) any information which the Board considers is necessary to enable it to verify any other information supplied to it under sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) A clinical commissioning group must supply the Board with any information specified in a direction under sub-paragraph (1) within such period as may be specified in the direction.
- (4) In this paragraph, a reference to the use of resources is a reference to their expenditure, consumption or reduction in value.

Provision of information required by the Secretary of State

- 19 (1) The Secretary of State may require each clinical commissioning group to provide the Board with such information as the Secretary of State considers it necessary to have for the purposes of the functions of the Secretary of State in relation to the health service.
- (2) The information must be provided in such form, and at such time or within such period, as the Secretary of State may require.
- (3) The powers conferred by this paragraph must be exercised in the same way in relation to each clinical commissioning group.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (4) The Board must give any information obtained by it under sub-paragraph (1) to the Secretary of State, in such form, and at such time or within such period, as the Secretary of State may require.

Incidental powers

- 20 The power conferred on a clinical commissioning group by section 2 includes, in particular, power to—
- (a) enter into agreements,
 - (b) acquire and dispose of property, and
 - (c) accept gifts (including property to be held on trust for the purposes of the clinical commissioning group).

Seal and evidence

- 21 (1) The application of a clinical commissioning group's seal must be authenticated by the signature of any person who has been authorised (generally or specially) for that purpose.
- (2) Any instrument which, if executed by an individual, would not need to be under seal may be executed on behalf of a clinical commissioning group by any person who has been authorised (generally or specially) for that purpose.
- (3) A document purporting to be duly executed under a clinical commissioning group's seal or to be signed on its behalf must be received in evidence and, unless the contrary is proven, taken to be so executed or signed.

PART 3

TRANSFER SCHEMES

- 22 The things that may be transferred under a property transfer scheme or a staff transfer scheme under section 14I include—
- (a) property, rights and liabilities that could not otherwise be transferred;
 - (b) property acquired, and rights and liabilities arising, after the making of the scheme;
 - (c) criminal liabilities.
- 23 A property transfer scheme or a staff transfer scheme may make supplementary, incidental, transitional and consequential provision and may in particular—
- (a) create rights, or impose liabilities, in relation to property or rights transferred;
 - (b) make provision about the continuing effect of things done by the transferor in respect of anything transferred;
 - (c) make provision about the continuation of things (including legal proceedings) in the process of being done by, on behalf of or in relation to the transferor in respect of anything transferred;
 - (d) make provision for references to the transferor in an instrument or other document in respect of anything transferred to be treated as references to the transferee.
- 24 A property transfer scheme may make provision for the shared ownership or use of property.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- 25 A staff transfer scheme may make provision which is the same or similar to the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006 (SI 2006/246).
- 26 A property transfer scheme or a staff transfer scheme may provide—
- (a) for the scheme to be modified by agreement after it comes into effect, and
 - (b) for any such modifications to have effect from the date when the original scheme comes into effect.”

SCHEDULE 3

Section 51(2)

PHARMACEUTICAL REMUNERATION

Commencement Information

- I7** [Sch. 3](#) partly in force; [Sch. 3](#) in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see [s. 306\(1\)\(d\)](#)
- I8** [Sch. 3](#) in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

“SCHEDULE 12A

Section 165A(3)

PHARMACEUTICAL REMUNERATION

Interpretation

- 1 In this Schedule—
- (a) “drugs” includes medicines and listed appliances (within the meaning of section 126), and
 - (b) “pharmaceutical remuneration” means remuneration paid by the Board to persons providing pharmaceutical services or local pharmaceutical services.

Pharmaceutical remuneration to be apportioned among clinical commissioning groups

- 2 (1) The Board must determine the elements of pharmaceutical remuneration in respect of which apportionments are to be made in relation to a financial year in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In this Schedule, those elements of pharmaceutical remuneration are referred to as “designated elements”.
- (3) The Board must notify each clinical commissioning group of a determination under sub-paragraph (1).
- (4) The Board must apportion the sums paid by it in respect of each designated element during the financial year among all clinical commissioning groups, in such manner as the Board thinks appropriate.
- (5) In apportioning sums under sub-paragraph (4), the Board may, in particular, take into account the financial consequences of orders for the provision of drugs that are attributable to the members of each clinical commissioning group.
- (6) Where an amount of pharmaceutical remuneration is apportioned to a clinical commissioning group, the Board—

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) may deduct that amount from the sums that it would otherwise pay to the group under section 223G(1), and
 - (b) if it does so, must notify the group accordingly.
- (7) The Secretary of State may direct the Board that an element of pharmaceutical remuneration specified in the direction is not to be included in a determination under sub-paragraph (1).
- (8) In determining the amount to be allotted to a clinical commissioning group for the purposes of section 223G, the Board must take into account the effect of this Schedule.
- (9) For the purposes of sections 223H and 223I(3) and paragraph 17 of Schedule 1A, any amount of which a clinical commissioning group is notified under sub-paragraph (6) is to be treated as expenditure of the group which is attributable to the performance by it of its functions in the year in question.

Other pharmaceutical remuneration

- 3 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to pharmaceutical remuneration paid in a financial year other than—
- (a) designated elements of such remuneration, and
 - (b) remuneration of a prescribed description.
- (2) The Board may require a person to reimburse the Board for any pharmaceutical remuneration to which this paragraph applies if the drugs or services to which the remuneration relates were—
- (a) ordered by that person, or
 - (b) ordered in the course of the delivery of a service arranged by that person.
- (3) Any sum payable to the Board by virtue of sub-paragraph (2) may be recovered summarily as a civil debt (but this does not affect any other method of recovery).

Exercise of functions

- 4 The Board may, with the consent of the Secretary of State—
- (a) direct a Special Health Authority to exercise any functions of the Board under this Schedule, or
 - (b) arrange for any other person to exercise any of those functions.”

SCHEDULE 4

Section 55(1)

AMENDMENTS OF THE NATIONAL HEALTH SERVICE ACT 2006

PART 1

THE HEALTH SERVICE IN ENGLAND

- 1 (1) For section 2 substitute—

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

“2 General power

The Secretary of State, the Board or a clinical commissioning group may do anything which is calculated to facilitate, or is conducive or incidental to, the discharge of any function conferred on that person by this Act.”

(2) For the cross-heading preceding section 2 substitute “General power”.

Commencement Information

- I9** Sch. 4 para. 1 in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [art. 10](#)) (as amended (22.10.2012) by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 15](#))
- I10** Sch. 4 para. 1 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

2 (1) Section 6 (performance of functions outside England) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (1) substitute—

“(1) Where the Secretary of State has a duty or power to provide anything under section 2A or 2B or Schedule 1, that thing may be provided outside England.”

(3) After subsection (1) insert—

“(1A) Where a clinical commissioning group or the Board has a duty or power to arrange for the provision of anything under section 3, 3A, 3B or 4 or Schedule 1, it may arrange for that thing to be provided outside England.”

(4) In subsection (2) for “The Secretary of State's functions” substitute “The functions of the Secretary of State, the Board and clinical commissioning groups”.

Commencement Information

- I11** Sch. 4 para. 2(1) in force at 1.2.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)
- I12** Sch. 4 para. 2(1) in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))
- I13** Sch. 4 para. 2(2)(4) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))
- I14** Sch. 4 para. 2(3) in force at 1.2.2013 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)

3 (1) Section 6A (reimbursement of cost of services provided in another EEA state) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (3)(b) after “Secretary of State” insert “, the Board”.

(3) In subsection (7) after “Secretary of State” insert “, the Board”.

(4) In subsection (8) in each of paragraphs (a) and (b)—

(a) after “Secretary of State” insert “, the Board”, and

(b) for “either of them” substitute “any of them”.

(5) In subsection (9), after “Secretary of State” (in the second place it occurs) insert “, the Board”.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (6) In subsection (11), in the definition of “responsible authority”—
- (a) omit “Strategic Health Authority or”,
 - (b) omit “Primary Care Trust”,
 - (c) before “responsible under” insert “a local authority or clinical commissioning group”, and
 - (d) for “securing” substitute “arranging for”.

Commencement Information

I15 Sch. 4 para. 3 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 4 (1) Section 6B (prior authorisation for the purposes of section 6A) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2)(b) after “Secretary of State” insert “, the Board”.
- (3) In subsection (5), in each of paragraphs (b) and (c) after “the Secretary of State” insert “, the Board”.

Commencement Information

I16 Sch. 4 para. 4 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 5 (1) In section 8 (Secretary of State's directions to health service bodies), in subsection (2)
- (a) omit paragraph (a), and
 - (b) omit paragraph (b).
- (2) In the heading to that section after “to” insert “certain”.
- (3) Before section 8 insert the following cross-heading “Directions to certain NHS bodies”.

Commencement Information

I17 Sch. 4 para. 5 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 6 (1) Section 9 (NHS contracts) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (4)—
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(za) the Board,
 - (zb) a clinical commissioning group,”
 - (b) omit paragraph (a), and
 - (c) omit paragraph (b).

Commencement Information

I18 Sch. 4 para. 6(1)(2)(b)(2)(c) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

I19 Sch. 4 para. 6(2)(a) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

- 7 In section 11 (arrangements to be treated as NHS contracts), in subsection (1)—

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (a) after “under which” insert “the Board,”
- (b) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,” and
- (c) omit “a Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I20 Sch. 4 para. 7(a) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#)

I21 Sch. 4 para. 7(b)(c) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 8 (1) Section 12 (arrangements with other bodies) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) for “any service under this Act” substitute “anything which the Secretary of State has a duty or power to provide, or arrange for the provision of, under section 2A or 2B or Schedule 1”.
- (3) For subsection (2) substitute—
- “(2) The bodies with whom arrangements may be made under subsection (1) include—
- (a) the Board,
 - (b) clinical commissioning groups,
 - (c) any other public authorities, and
 - (d) voluntary organisations.”
- (4) For subsection (3) substitute—
- “(3) The Secretary of State may make available any facilities provided by the Secretary of State under section 2A or 2B or Schedule 1 to any service provider or to any eligible voluntary organisation.
- (3A) In subsection (3)—
- “eligible voluntary organisation” means a voluntary organisation eligible for assistance under section 64 or section 65 of the Health Services and Public Health Act 1968;
- “service provider” means a person or body with whom the Secretary of State has made an arrangement under subsection (1).”
- (5) In subsection (4)—
- (a) after paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(aa) the Board,
 - (ab) a clinical commissioning group,
 - (ac) a local authority,”
 - (b) omit paragraph (b), and
 - (c) omit paragraph (c).
- (6) After subsection (4) insert—
- “(4A) In subsection (4), “local authority” has the same meaning as in section 2B.”
- (7) For the cross-heading preceding section 12 substitute “Arrangements with other bodies”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I22 Sch. 4 para. 8 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

9 After section 12 insert—

“12ZA Commissioning arrangements by the Board or clinical commissioning groups

- (1) This section applies in relation to arrangements made by the Board or a clinical commissioning group in the exercise of functions under section 3, 3A, 3B or 4 or Schedule 1.
- (2) The arrangements may be made with any person or body (including public authorities and voluntary organisations).
- (3) If the Board or a clinical commissioning group arranges for the provision of facilities by a service provider, it may also make arrangements for those facilities to be made available to another service provider or to an eligible voluntary organisation.
- (4) The Board or a clinical commissioning group may make available any of its facilities to—
 - (a) a service provider, or
 - (b) an eligible voluntary organisation.
- (5) Where facilities are made available under subsection (4) any of the following persons may make available the services of any employee of that person who is employed in connection with the facilities—
 - (a) the Secretary of State,
 - (b) the Board,
 - (c) a clinical commissioning group,
 - (d) a Special Health Authority, or
 - (e) a Local Health Board.
- (6) Goods or materials may be made available under this section either temporarily or permanently.
- (7) Any power to supply goods or materials under this section includes—
 - (a) a power to purchase or store them, and
 - (b) a power to arrange with third parties for the supply of goods or materials by those third parties.
- (8) Powers under this section may be exercised on such terms as may be agreed, including terms as to the making of payments.
- (9) In this section—

“eligible voluntary organisation” means a voluntary organisation eligible for assistance under section 64 or section 65 of the Health Services and Public Health Act 1968;

“service provider” means a person or body with whom the Board or a clinical commissioning group has made arrangements in the exercise of the functions mentioned in subsection (1).”

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

- I23** Sch. 4 para. 9 in force at 1.2.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), **art. 2(4)**
I24 Sch. 4 para. 9 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 10 (1) Section 12A (direct payments for health care) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) after “The Secretary of State” insert “, the Board, a clinical commissioning group or a local authority”.
- (3) In subsection (2)—
- (a) for paragraph (a) substitute—
- “(a) anything that the Secretary of State or a local authority has a duty or power to provide or arrange under section 2A or 2B or Schedule 1;”,
- (b) after that paragraph insert—
- “(aa) anything that the Board or a clinical commissioning group may or must arrange for the provision of under this Act or any other enactment.”, and
- (c) omit paragraphs (b) and (c).
- (4) In subsection (4)—
- (a) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “a clinical commissioning group”,
- (b) for “the trust” substitute “the group”, and
- (c) at the end insert “; and the references in this subsection to a clinical commissioning group are, so far as necessary for the purposes of regulations under subsection (2E) of that section, to be read as references to the Board.”
- (5) In subsection (5), omit “or under regulations under subsection (4)”.
- (6) After subsection (6) insert—
- “(7) In this section and sections 12B to 12D, “local authority” has the same meaning as in section 2B.”

Commencement Information

- I25** Sch. 4 para. 10 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 11 (1) Section 12B (regulations about direct payments) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2), in each of paragraphs (d), (g), (h) and (j), for “or the Primary Care Trust” substitute “, the Board, a clinical commissioning group or a local authority”.
- (3) In subsection (4) —
- (a) for “or the Primary Care Trust”, in the first place it occurs, substitute “, the Board, a clinical commissioning group or a local authority”, and
- (b) for “or the Primary Care Trust”, in the second place it occurs, substitute “the Board, a clinical commissioning group or a local authority (as the case may be)”.
- (4) In subsection (5)—

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) in paragraph (a), after “the Secretary of State” insert “or a local authority or as arranged for by the Board or a clinical commissioning group (as the case may be)”, and
- (b) in paragraph (b) for “a Primary Care Trust with respect to the provision of” substitute “the Board, a clinical commissioning group or a local authority with respect to the arrangement for the provision of”.

Commencement Information

I26 Sch. 4 para. 11 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 12 In section 12D (arrangements with other bodies relating to direct payments)—
- (a) in subsection (1) after “the Secretary of State” insert “, the Board, a clinical commissioning group or a local authority”, and
 - (b) in subsection (3) after “the Secretary of State” insert “, the Board, a clinical commissioning group or a local authority”.

Commencement Information

I27 Sch. 4 para. 12 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

PART 2

NHS BODIES

- 13 In section 28 (special health authorities), omit subsection (6).

Commencement Information

I28 Sch. 4 para. 13 in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

- 14 In section 29 (exercise of Special Health Authority functions), in subsection (2)(a)—
- (a) omit “, section 14”, and
 - (b) omit “, section 19”.

Commencement Information

I29 Sch. 4 para. 14 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 15 Omit Chapter 5B of Part 2 (trust special administrators: Primary Care Trusts).

Commencement Information

I30 Sch. 4 para. 15 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 16 In section 67 (effect of intervention orders), in subsection (1)—
- (a) in paragraph (a)—
 - (i) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” and

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (ii) omit “Primary Care Trust,” and
- (b) in paragraph (b)—
 - (i) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” and
 - (ii) omit “Primary Care Trust,”.

Commencement Information

I31 Sch. 4 para. 16 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 17 In section 70 (transfer of residual liabilities)—
- (a) in subsection (1)—
 - (i) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (ii) omit “a Primary Care Trust,”, and
 - (b) in the heading, at the end insert “of certain health service bodies”.

Commencement Information

I32 Sch. 4 para. 17 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 18 (1) Section 71 (schemes for meeting losses and liabilities in respect of certain health service bodies) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2)—
- (a) after “are—” insert—
 - “(za) the Board,
 - (zb) clinical commissioning groups,”
 - (b) omit paragraph (a),
 - (c) omit paragraph (b),
 - (d) after paragraph (h) (and before the “and” immediately following it) insert—
 - “(ha) a company formed under section 223 and wholly or partly owned by the Secretary of State or the Board,
 - (hb) a subsidiary of a company which is formed under that section and wholly owned by the Secretary of State,”, and”
 - (e) in paragraph (i)—
 - (i) for “paragraphs (a) to (h)”, in the first place where it occurs, substitute “paragraphs (za) to (hb)”, and
 - (ii) for “paragraphs (a) to (h)”, in the second place where it occurs, substitute “paragraphs (za) to (h)”.
- (3) In subsection (2A)—
- (a) after paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(ab) in relation to a company within paragraph (ha) or (hb) of subsection (2), means the company's activities in providing facilities or services to any person or body;”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (b) for “paragraphs (a) to (h)” substitute “paragraphs (za) to (h)”.
- (4) In subsection (3)(a)—
- (a) after “the Secretary of State” insert “or the Board”,

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (b) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” and
- (c) omit “Primary Care Trust,”.

(5) In subsection (5), for “(a) to (d),” substitute “(c), (d),”.

(6) In subsection (6)—

- (a) after “the Secretary of State,” insert “the Board or”,
- (b) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” and
- (c) omit “Primary Care Trust,”.

Commencement Information

- I33** Sch. 4 para. 18(1) in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**
- I34** Sch. 4 para. 18(1) in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))
- I35** Sch. 4 para. 18(2)(a)(d)(e)(3)(4)(a)(6)(a) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**
- I36** Sch. 4 para. 18(2)(b)(c)(4)(b)(c)(5)(6)(b)(c) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

19 In section 73 (directions and regulations), in subsection (1) omit paragraphs (c) to (f).

Commencement Information

- I37** Sch. 4 para. 19 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

20 Omit Schedule 2.

Commencement Information

- I38** Sch. 4 para. 20 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

21 Omit Schedule 3.

Commencement Information

- I39** Sch. 4 para. 21 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

22 (1) Schedule 4 (NHS trusts) is amended as follows.

(2) In paragraph (5)(1)(f), omit “Primary Care Trusts,”.

(3) In paragraph 6—

- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) —
 - (i) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” and
 - (ii) omit “, Primary Care Trust”, and
- (b) in sub-paragraph (2) —
 - (i) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” and
 - (ii) omit “, Primary Care Trust”.

(4) In paragraph 7(3), omit “Strategic Health Authority,”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (5) In paragraph 8—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), omit “, Primary Care Trust” (in each place where it occurs), and
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (4), omit “, Primary Care Trust”,
 - (c) in sub-paragraph (5), omit “, Primary Care Trust” (in each place where it occurs),
 - (d) in sub-paragraph (6)(b), omit “, Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (e) in sub-paragraph (9)(b), omit “, Primary Care Trust”.
- (6) In paragraph 9—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)—
 - (i) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (ii) omit “a Primary Care Trust,”,
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (3)—
 - (i) omit “Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (ii) omit “Primary Care Trust,”,
 - (c) in sub-paragraph (6)—
 - (i) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (ii) omit “, a Primary Care Trust,”,
 - (d) in sub-paragraph (7)—
 - (i) in paragraph (a), omit “Strategic Health Authority,”,
 - (ii) in that paragraph omit “or belong to a Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (iii) in the words following paragraph (b)—
 - (a) omit “Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (b) omit “Primary Care Trust,”.
- (7) In paragraph 15, omit sub-paragraphs (2) and (3).
- (8) In paragraph 18—
- (a) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” and
 - (b) omit “Primary Care Trust,”.
- (9) In paragraph 29, in sub-paragraph (3) omit “Strategic Health Authority,”.
- (10) In paragraph 30, in sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” and
 - (b) omit “Primary Care Trust,”.

Commencement Information

140 Sch. 4 para. 22 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 23 (1) Schedule 6 (special health authorities established under section 28) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 3(8)—
- (a) for “to a Strategic Health Authority” substitute “to the Board”, and
 - (b) for “a Strategic Health Authority” substitute “the Board”.
- (3) In paragraph 3(12)—

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) in paragraph (a) for “of a Strategic Health Authority” substitute “of the Board”, and
- (b) in paragraph (b) omit “or by a Strategic Health Authority”.

(4) In paragraph 13 for “a Strategic Health Authority” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I41 Sch. 4 para. 23 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

PART 3

LOCAL AUTHORITIES

- 24 In section 74 (supply of goods and services by local authorities), in subsection (1) (a)—
- (a) at the beginning insert “the Board and”,
 - (b) after “any” insert “clinical commissioning group or”,
 - (c) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” and
 - (d) omit “or Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I42 Sch. 4 para. 24 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 25 In section 76 (power of local authorities to make payments), in subsection (1)—
- (a) after the first “to” insert “the Board, a clinical commissioning group”,
 - (b) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,” and
 - (c) omit “a Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I43 Sch. 4 para. 25 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 26 In section 77 (Care Trusts), in each of subsections (1)(a), (10) and (12) omit “a Primary Care Trust or”.

Commencement Information

I44 Sch. 4 para. 26 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 27 In section 78 (directed partnership agreements), in subsection (3)—
- (a) omit paragraph (a), and
 - (b) omit paragraph (b).

Commencement Information

I45 Sch. 4 para. 27 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- 28 (1) Section 80 (supply of goods and services by the Secretary of State) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) after “The Secretary of State” insert “, the Board or a clinical commissioning group”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (b) for “he” substitute “the Secretary of State”.
- (3) In subsection (3)—
- (a) in paragraph (a) omit “or by a Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (b)—
 - (i) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,” and
 - (ii) omit “a Primary Care Trust,”.
- (4) After subsection (3) insert—
- “(3A) The Board or a clinical commissioning group may make available to persons falling within subsection (1)—
- (a) any facilities the provision of which is arranged by the Board or (as the case may be) the clinical commissioning group under this Act (including by virtue of section 7A),
 - (b) any facilities of the Board or (as the case may be) the group, and
 - (c) the services of persons employed by the Board or (as the case may be) the group.”
- (5) In subsection (4) after “carry out” insert “, and the Board or a clinical commissioning group may arrange for the carrying out of,”.
- (6) In subsection (5), for “The Secretary of State” substitute “The Board”.
- (7) In subsection (6)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), after “provided” insert “by the Secretary of State”,
 - (b) in paragraph (b)—
 - (i) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,” and
 - (ii) omit “a Primary Care Trust,” and
 - (c) in paragraph (c)—
 - (i) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,” and
 - (ii) omit “a Primary Care Trust,”.
- (8) After subsection (6) insert—
- “(6A) The Board and each clinical commissioning group must make available to local authorities—
- (a) any services (other than the services of any person) or other facilities the provision of which is arranged by the Board or (as the case may be) the clinical commissioning group under this Act,
 - (b) the services of persons employed by the Board or (as the case may be) the group, and
 - (c) any facilities of the Board or (as the case may be) the group,
- so far as is reasonably necessary and practicable to enable local authorities to discharge their functions relating to social services, education and public health.”

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(9) In subsection (7)—

- (a) for “The Secretary of State” substitute “The Board”,
- (b) at the end of paragraph (c) insert “or”, and
- (c) omit paragraph (e) and the word “or” immediately preceding it.

(10) After that subsection insert—

“(8) The Secretary of State may arrange to make available to local authorities the services of persons providing Special Health Authorities or Local Health Boards with services of a kind provided as part of the health service, so far as is reasonably necessary and practicable to enable local authorities to discharge their functions relating to social services, education and public health.

(9) The Board or a clinical commissioning group may arrange to make available to local authorities the services of persons providing services pursuant to arrangements made under this Act by the Board or (as the case may be) the clinical commissioning group, so far as is reasonably necessary and practicable to enable local authorities to discharge their functions relating to social services, education and public health.

(10) The reference in subsection (9) to arrangements made by the Board or (as the case may be) a clinical commissioning group includes a reference to arrangements so made by virtue of section 7A.”

(11) In the title to section 80, after “Secretary of State” insert “, the Board and clinical commissioning groups”.

(12) Until the commencement of section 34, subsection (8) of section 80 of the National Health Service Act 2006 (as inserted by sub-paragraph (10)) has effect as if after “Special Health Authorities” there were inserted “, Primary Care Trusts”.

Commencement Information

I46 Sch. 4 para. 28 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

29 (1) Section 81 (conditions of supply under section 80) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

- (a) for the words from the beginning to “that section” substitute “Before a person makes the services of any officer available under section 80(3)(b), (3A)(c), (6)(b) or (c) or (6A)(b), the person must”,
- (b) in paragraph (a) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the person”, and
- (c) in paragraph (b) at the beginning insert “where the person is the Secretary of State and is not the officer's employer,”.

(3) In subsection (2)—

- (a) for “The Secretary of State” substitute “The person concerned”, and
- (b) for “he” substitute “it”.

(4) In subsection (3)—

- (a) omit “Strategic Health Authorities,”, and
- (b) omit “Primary Care Trusts,”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (5) In subsection (4) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the person who makes the services available”.
- (6) In subsection (5) —
- (a) for the words from the beginning to “section 80(6)” substitute “A person who makes services or facilities available under section 80(6) or (6A) may make such charges in respect of them”, and
 - (b) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the person”.

Commencement Information

I47 Sch. 4 para. 29 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

PART 4

MEDICAL SERVICES

- 30 (1) Section 83 (duty relating to primary medical services) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsections (1) and (2) substitute—
- “(1) The Board must, to the extent that it considers necessary to meet all reasonable requirements, exercise its powers so as to secure the provision of primary medical services throughout England.
- (2) The Board may (in addition to any other power conferred on it) make such arrangements for the provision of primary medical services as it considers appropriate; and it may, in particular, make contractual arrangements with any person.
- (2A) Arrangements made for the purposes of subsection (1) or (2) may include arrangements for the performance of a service outside England.”
- (3) In subsection (3) of that section, for “Each Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.
- (4) Omit subsection (4).
- (5) For the cross-heading preceding that section substitute “Duty of the Board in relation to primary medical services”.

Commencement Information

I48 Sch. 4 para. 30 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 31 (1) Section 84 (general medical services contracts: introductory) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.
- (3) In subsections (3) and (5), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (4) In subsection (4), for paragraph (b) substitute—
- “(b) services to be performed outside England.”

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I49 Sch. 4 para. 31 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 32 In section 86 (persons eligible to enter into general medical services contracts), in subsection (1), for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.

Commencement Information

I50 Sch. 4 para. 32 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 33 In section 87 (general medical services contracts: payments), in subsection (3)(d), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I51 Sch. 4 para. 33 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 34 (1) In section 89 (general medical services contracts: required terms), in subsection (4)(a), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (2) The variations to contract terms that may be imposed by virtue of subsection (2)(d) of that section include, in particular, variations in consequence of the establishment of clinical commissioning groups.

Commencement Information

I52 Sch. 4 para. 34 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 35 (1) Section 91 (persons performing primary medical services) is amended as follows.
- (2) In the following provisions, for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”—
- (a) subsection (1), in each place it occurs,
 - (b) subsection (3)(j),
 - (c) subsection (4)(a), (b) and (d), and
 - (d) subsection (6)(a) and (b).
- (3) In subsection (2), for paragraph (b) substitute—
- “(b) the Board is responsible for a medical service if it secures its provision by or under any enactment.”
- (4) In subsection (3), in paragraph (c), omit the words from “as to” to “, and”.

Commencement Information

I53 Sch. 4 para. 35 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 36 (1) Section 92 (arrangements by Strategic Health Authorities for the provision of primary medical services) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1) substitute—

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

“(1) The Board may make agreements, other than arrangements pursuant to section 83(2) or general medical services contracts, under which primary medical services are provided.”

- (3) Omit subsection (6).
- (4) Omit subsection (7).
- (5) For the title to that section substitute “Arrangements by the Board for the provision of primary medical services”.
- (6) The provision which may be made by virtue of section 304(10)(a) of this Act in an order under section 306 of this Act providing for the commencement of this paragraph includes, in particular, provision enabling the National Health Service Commissioning Board to direct Primary Care Trusts to exercise its functions under section 92 pending the commencement of section 34 of this Act.

Commencement Information

- I54** Sch. 4 para. 36 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 36 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)
- I55** Sch. 4 para. 36 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 37 (1) Section 93 (participants in section 92 arrangements) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
 - (a) for “A Strategic Health Authority” substitute “The Board”, and
 - (b) omit paragraph (g).
 - (3) In subsection (3), in the definition of “NHS employee”, in paragraph (b), omit “Primary Care Trust or”.
 - (4) In that subsection, in the definition of “qualifying body”, for “(e) or (g)” substitute “or (e)”.

Commencement Information

- I56** Sch. 4 para. 37 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 38 (1) Section 94 (regulations about section 92 arrangements) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2), for “Strategic Health Authorities” substitute “the Board”.
 - (3) In subsection (3), after paragraph (c) insert—
 - “(ca) make provision with respect to the performance outside England of services to be provided in accordance with section 92 arrangements.”.
 - (4) In subsection (6), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
 - (5) The variations of arrangements which may be imposed by virtue of subsection (3) (f) include, in particular, variations in consequence of the establishment of clinical commissioning groups.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I57 Sch. 4 para. 38 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

39 Omit section 95 (transfer of liabilities relating to section 92 arrangements).

Commencement Information

I58 Sch. 4 para. 39 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

40 (1) Section 96 (assistance and support) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

(a) for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”, and

(b) before paragraph (a) insert—

“(za) primary medical services pursuant to section 83(2),”.

(3) In subsection (2)—

(a) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and

(b) for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I59 Sch. 4 para. 40 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

41 (1) Section 97 (Local Medical Committees) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for the words from the beginning to “other Primary Care Trusts” substitute “The Board may recognise a committee formed for an area”.

(3) In subsection (3)—

(a) in paragraph (a), omit sub-paragraph (i), and

(b) in paragraph (b), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

(4) In subsection (6), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

(5) Omit subsection (7).

(6) In subsection (10)—

(a) for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”, and

(b) in paragraphs (a) and (b), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I60 Sch. 4 para. 41 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

PART 5

DENTAL SERVICES

- 42 (1) Section 99 (duty relating to primary dental services) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1) substitute—
- “(1) The Board must, to the extent that it considers necessary to meet all reasonable requirements, exercise its powers so as to secure the provision of primary dental services throughout England.
- (1A) Arrangements made for the purposes of subsection (1) may include arrangements for the performance of a service outside England.”
- (3) Omit subsection (2).
- (4) In subsection (3)—
- (a) for “Each Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”, and
- (b) for “for which it makes provision” substitute “for which provision is made”.
- (5) Omit subsection (4).
- (6) For the cross-heading preceding that section substitute “Duty of the Board in relation to primary dental services”.

Commencement Information

I61 Sch. 4 para. 42 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 43 (1) Section 100 (general dental services contracts: introductory) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.
- (3) In subsections (3) and (4), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (4) In subsection (3), in paragraph (a), after “dental services” insert “or services which are to be performed outside England”.

Commencement Information

I62 Sch. 4 para. 43 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 44 In section 102 (persons eligible to enter into general dental services contracts), in subsection (1), for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.

Commencement Information

I63 Sch. 4 para. 44 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 45 In section 103 (general dental services contracts: payments), in subsection (3)(d), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I64 Sch. 4 para. 45 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 46 In section 104 (general dental services contracts: required terms), in subsection (3) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I65 Sch. 4 para. 46 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 47 (1) Section 106 (persons performing primary dental services) is amended as follows.
- (2) In the following provisions, for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”—
- (a) subsection (1), in each place it occurs,
 - (b) subsection (3)(j),
 - (c) subsection (4)(a), (b) and (d), and
 - (d) subsection (6)(a) and (b).
- (3) In subsection (2), for paragraph (b) substitute—
- “(b) the Board is responsible for a dental service if it secures its provision by or under any enactment.”
- (4) In subsection (3), in paragraph (c), omit the words from “as to” to “, and”.

Commencement Information

I66 Sch. 4 para. 47 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 48 (1) Section 107 (arrangements by Strategic Health Authorities for the provision of primary dental services) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1) substitute—
- “(1) The Board may make agreements, other than general dental services contracts, under which primary dental services are provided.”
- (3) Omit subsection (7).
- (4) For the title to that section substitute “Arrangements by the Board for the provision of primary dental services”.
- (5) The provision which may be made by virtue of section 304(10)(a) of this Act in an order under section 306 of this Act providing for the commencement of this paragraph includes, in particular, provision enabling the National Health Service Commissioning Board to direct Primary Care Trusts to exercise its functions under section 107 pending the commencement of section 34 of this Act.

Commencement Information

I67 Sch. 4 para. 48 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 48 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

I68 Sch. 4 para. 48 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160, art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 49 (1) Section 108 (participants in section 107 arrangements) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) for “A Strategic Health Authority” substitute “The Board”, and
 - (b) omit paragraph (g).
- (3) In subsection (3), in the definition of “NHS employee”, in paragraph (b), omit “Primary Care Trust or”.

Commencement Information

I69 Sch. 4 para. 49 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160, art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 50 (1) Section 109 (regulations about section 107 arrangements) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2), for “Strategic Health Authorities” substitute “the Board”.
- (3) In subsection (3), after paragraph (c) insert—
- “(ca) make provision with respect to the performance outside England of services to be provided in accordance with section 107 arrangements.”
- (4) In subsection (6), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I70 Sch. 4 para. 50 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160, art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 51 Omit section 110 (transfer of liabilities relating to section 107 arrangements).

Commencement Information

I71 Sch. 4 para. 51 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160, art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 52 (1) Section 112 (assistance and support) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.
- (3) In subsection (2)—
- (a) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (b) for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I72 Sch. 4 para. 52 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160, art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 53 (1) Section 113 (Local Dental Committees) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for the words from the beginning to “other Primary Care Trusts” substitute “The Board may recognise a committee formed for an area”.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (3) In subsection (3)(b), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (4) In subsection (6), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (5) Omit subsection (7).
- (6) In subsection (10)—
 - (a) for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”, and
 - (b) in paragraphs (a) and (b), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I73 Sch. 4 para. 53 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

PART 6

OPHTHALMIC SERVICES

- 54 (1) Section 115 (duty relating to primary ophthalmic services) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for the words from the beginning to “area,” substitute “The Board must exercise its powers so as to secure the provision throughout England”.
 - (3) After that subsection insert—
 - “(1A) Arrangements made for the purposes of subsection (1) may include arrangements for the performance of a service outside England.”
 - (4) For subsection (4) substitute—
 - “(4) The Board may (in addition to any other power conferred on it) make such arrangements for the provision of primary ophthalmic services as it considers appropriate; and it may, in particular, make contractual arrangements with any person.
 - (4A) Arrangements made for the purposes of subsection (4) may include arrangements for the performance of a service outside England.”
 - (5) In subsection (5), for “Each Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.
 - (6) Omit subsection (6).
 - (7) In subsection (9), in paragraph (b), for “(d)” substitute “(e)”.
 - (8) For the cross-heading preceding that section substitute “Duty of the Board in relation to primary ophthalmic services”.

Commencement Information

I74 Sch. 4 para. 54 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 55 (1) Section 117 (general ophthalmic services contracts: introductory) is amended as follows.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (2) In subsection (1), for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.
- (3) In subsections (3) and (5), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (4) In subsection (4), for paragraph (b) substitute—
 “(b) services which are to be performed outside England.”

Commencement Information

I75 Sch. 4 para. 55 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 56 In section 118 (persons eligible to enter into general ophthalmic services contracts), in subsection (1), for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.

Commencement Information

I76 Sch. 4 para. 56 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 57 In section 119 (exclusion of contractors), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I77 Sch. 4 para. 57 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 58 In section 120 (general ophthalmic services contracts: payments), in subsection (3) (d), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I78 Sch. 4 para. 58 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 59 In section 121 (general ophthalmic services contracts: other required terms), in subsection (3)(a), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I79 Sch. 4 para. 59 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 60 (1) Section 123 (persons performing primary ophthalmic services) is amended as follows.
- (2) In the following provisions, for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”—
 - (a) subsection (1), in each place it occurs,
 - (b) subsection (3)(j),
 - (c) subsection (4)(a), (b) and (d), and
 - (d) subsection (7)(a) and (b).
 - (3) In subsection (2), for paragraph (b) substitute—
 “(b) the Board is responsible for an ophthalmic service if it secures its provision by or under any enactment.”

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

(4) In subsection (3), in paragraph (c), omit the words from “as to” to “, and”.

Commencement Information

I80 Sch. 4 para. 60 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

61 (1) Section 124 (primary ophthalmic services: assistance and support) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

- (a) for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”, and
- (b) at the end insert “or primary ophthalmic services that fall within section 115(4)”.

(3) In subsection (2)—

- (a) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
- (b) for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I81 Sch. 4 para. 61 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

62 (1) Section 125 (Local Optical Committees) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for the words from the beginning to “other Primary Care Trusts” substitute “The Board may recognise a committee formed for an area”.

(3) In subsection (3)—

- (a) in paragraph (a), omit “, whether under section 115(4)(a), or”, and
- (b) in paragraph (b), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

(4) In subsection (7), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

(5) In subsection (10)—

- (a) for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”, and
- (b) in paragraphs (a) and (b), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I82 Sch. 4 para. 62 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

PART 7

PHARMACEUTICAL SERVICES

63 (1) Section 126 (arrangements for pharmaceutical services) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for “Each Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (3) In subsection (3), for the words from “as respects” to “that area” substitute “for the provision to persons who are in England”.
- (4) In subsection (6), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (5) Omit subsection (7).

Commencement Information

I83 Sch. 4 para. 63 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 64 (1) Section 127 (arrangements for additional pharmaceutical services) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsections (1)(a) and (b) and (2), for “a Primary Care Trust”, substitute “the Board”.
 - (3) In subsection (1)(a), for “within or outside its area” substitute “in England”.
 - (4) In subsection (2), omit the words from “(whether” to the end.

Commencement Information

I84 Sch. 4 para. 64 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 65 (1) Section 128 (terms and conditions of arrangements under section 127) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “the Primary Care Trust to which they apply” substitute “the Board”.
 - (3) In subsection (4), for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.
 - (4) In subsection (5), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I85 Sch. 4 para. 65 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 66 (1) Section 129 (regulations as to pharmaceutical services) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
 - (3) In subsection (2)—
 - (a) in paragraph (a)—
 - (i) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (ii) for “the area of the Primary Care Trust” substitute “England”,
 - (b) in paragraph (b), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (c) in paragraph (c), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
 - (4) After subsection (2ZA) (inserted by section 207(3)) insert—

“(2ZB) Regulations under subsection (2)(a) may, in particular, require a list of persons to be prepared by reference to the area in which the premises from

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

which the services are provided are situated (and regulations imposing that requirement must prescribe the description of area by reference to which the list is to be prepared).”

- (5) In subsection (2A), for “The Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”,
- (6) In subsections (2C), (3A), (4), (5) and (8), for “the Primary Care Trust”, in each place it appears, substitute “the Board”.
- (7) In subsection (6)—
 - (a) in paragraphs (za), (a), (b), (c), (d), (g), (h), (i), (j) and (k), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”,
 - (b) in paragraphs (b), (e) and (k), for “the Primary Care Trust”, in each place it appears, substitute “the Board”, and
 - (c) in paragraph (f), for “that Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (8) In subsection (6)(c)—
 - (a) for “the Primary Care Trust”, in the first place it appears, substitute “the Board”, and
 - (b) omit “in the area of the Primary Care Trust”.
- (9) In subsection (10A), for “Primary Care Trusts” substitute “The Board”.

Commencement Information

- I86** Sch. 4 para. 66 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160, art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))
- I87** Sch. 4 para. 66 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 66 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)

- 67 In section 130 (regulations about appeals from decisions on applications for inclusion in pharmaceutical list), in subsection (2)—
 - (a) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (b) for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

- I88** Sch. 4 para. 67 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160, art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 68 (1) Section 131 (power to charge fee to applicants) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
 - (3) In subsections (2)(b), (3)(b) and (5), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
 - (4) In subsection (3)(a), omit the words from “and such” to the end.

Commencement Information

- I89** Sch. 4 para. 68 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160, art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- 69 (1) Section 132 (persons authorised to provide pharmaceutical services) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsections (1) and (4)(a), (b), (c), (d) and (e), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (3) In subsection (3)—
- (a) for “each Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (b) for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (4) In subsection (4), after paragraph (a) insert—
- “(aa) requiring a list of medical practitioners referred to in subsection (3) to be prepared by reference to an area of a prescribed description,”.
- (5) In subsection (5)—
- (a) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (b) for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I90 Sch. 4 para. 69 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 70 (1) Section 133 (inadequate provision of pharmaceutical services) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)(a)—
- (a) for “the area, or part of the area, of a Primary Care Trust” substitute “any part of England”, and
 - (b) omit “area or”.
- (3) In subsection (1)(b), for “any such area or part” substitute “any part of England”.
- (4) In subsection (2)(a), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I91 Sch. 4 para. 70 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 71 (1) Section 134 (pilot schemes) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “Primary Care Trusts” substitute “The Board”.
- (3) In subsection (2)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”,
 - (b) after that paragraph insert “and”,
 - (c) in paragraph (b), omit “(otherwise than by the Primary Care Trust)”, and
 - (d) omit paragraph (c) and the preceding “and”.
- (4) In subsection (5), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I92 Sch. 4 para. 71 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- 72 In section 136 (designation of priority neighbourhoods or premises), in subsections (1) and (2)(b), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board.”

Commencement Information

I93 Sch. 4 para. 72 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 73 In section 137 (reviews of pilot schemes), in subsection (3)(a), for “the Primary Care Trust concerned” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I94 Sch. 4 para. 73 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 74 (1) Section 138 (variation and termination of pilot schemes) is amended as follows.
(2) In subsection (1), for “Primary Care Trusts” substitute “the Board”.
(3) In subsections (2) and (3), for “the Primary Care Trust concerned” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I95 Sch. 4 para. 74 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 75 (1) Section 140 (funding of preparatory work) is amended as follows.
(2) In subsection (1), for “Primary Care Trusts” substitute “the Board”.
(3) In subsection (3)(b) and (c), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I96 Sch. 4 para. 75 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 76 (1) In section 144 (local pharmaceutical services schemes)—
(a) for “Primary Care Trusts” substitute “the Board or the Secretary of State”,
and
(b) omit “or Strategic Health Authorities”.
(2) In consequence of the repeal made by sub-paragraph (1)(b), omit section 29(4) of the Health Act 2009.

Commencement Information

I97 Sch. 4 para. 76 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 77 (1) Section 148 (conditional inclusion in pharmaceutical lists) is amended as follows.
(2) In subsection (1), in paragraph (a), for “the Primary Care Trust in whose list he is included” substitute “the Board”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

(3) In subsections (1)(b), (c) and (e), (3)(a) and (b)(ii) and (iii) and (4), for “the Primary Care Trust”, in each place it appears, substitute “the Board”.

(4) In subsection (6), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I98 Sch. 4 para. 77 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

78 (1) Section 150A (notices and penalties) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

(a) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and

(b) for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

(3) In subsection (2), for “Primary Care Trusts” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I99 Sch. 4 para. 78 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

79 (1) Section 151 (disqualification of practitioners) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

(3) In subsection (5), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

(4) In subsection (6), for “The Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.

Commencement Information

I100 Sch. 4 para. 79 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

80 (1) Section 152 (contingent removal) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsections (1) and (3), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

(3) In subsection (4), for “The Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.

Commencement Information

I101 Sch. 4 para. 80 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

81 In section 154 (suspension), in subsections (1), (3), (4), (6)(b) and (c) and (8) (in each place it appears), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I102 Sch. 4 para. 81 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

82 (1) Section 155 (suspension pending removal) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsections (1), (3) and (6), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(3) In subsection (5), for “The Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.

Commencement Information

I103 Sch. 4 para. 82 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 83 (1) Section 157 (review of decisions) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “The Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.
- (3) In subsections (2)(a) and (3), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I104 Sch. 4 para. 83 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 84 (1) Section 158 (appeals) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (3) In subsections (2) and (6), for “The Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.
- (4) In subsections (3), (4) and (5)(a) and (b) for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (5) In subsection (7), for “Primary Care Trusts” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I105 Sch. 4 para. 84 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 85 (1) Section 159 (national disqualification) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “each Primary Care Trust”, in each place it appears, substitute “the Board”.
- (3) In subsection (3), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (4) In subsection (4)—
- (a) for “The Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”, and
 - (b) for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (5) In subsection (5), for “the Primary Care Trust's” substitute “the Board's”.
- (6) In subsection (6)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “no Primary Care Trust or” substitute “neither the Board nor a”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (b), for “each Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board (if he is included in a list prepared by it)”.

Commencement Information

I106 Sch. 4 para. 85 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- 86 In section 160 (notification of decisions), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I107 Sch. 4 para. 86 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 87 In section 161 (withdrawal from lists), in paragraphs (a) and (b), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I108 Sch. 4 para. 87 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 88 (1) Section 162 (regulations about decisions under Chapter 6 of Part 7) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsections (1) and (2)(b), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (3) In subsections (2)(c) and (3), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I109 Sch. 4 para. 88 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 89 (1) Section 164 (remuneration for persons providing pharmaceutical services) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3)(b), for “any Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (3) In subsection (4A)(a)—
- (a) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
- (b) for “to persons who provide” substitute “for providing”.

Commencement Information

I110 Sch. 4 para. 89 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 90 (1) Section 166 (indemnity cover) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2)(b)—
- (a) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
- (b) for “the Primary Care Trust”, in each place it appears, substitute “the Board”.
- (3) In subsection (3), in paragraph (a) of the definition of “indemnity cover”, for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.

Commencement Information

I111 Sch. 4 para. 90 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 91 (1) Section 167 (local pharmaceutical committees) is amended as follows.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2) In subsection (1), for the words from the beginning to “other Primary Care Trusts,” substitute “The Board may recognise a committee formed for an area”.
- (3) In subsections (2)(a) and (3)(a), omit “in the Primary Care Trust's area”.
- (4) In subsections (2)(a) and (b), (3)(a) and (b), (9), (10) and (11), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (5) In subsections (6) and (7), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
- (6) In subsection (9), for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.

Commencement Information

I112 Sch. 4 para. 91 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with arts. 7-9)

- 92 (1) Schedule 11 (pilot schemes) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 1 (initiation of pilot schemes), in sub-paragraph (1)(a), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”.
 - (3) In paragraph 2 (preliminary steps)—
 - (a) in sub-paragraph (1), for “the Primary Care Trust concerned” substitute “the Board”,
 - (b) in sub-paragraphs (2), (3), (4) and (5)(a) and (b), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”,
 - (c) in sub-paragraph (3)(b), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (d) in sub-paragraph (5)(d)—
 - (i) for “Primary Care Trusts” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (ii) for “them” substitute “it”.
 - (4) In paragraph 3 (approvals)—
 - (a) in sub-paragraphs (2) and (3)(b), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (3)(a), for “the Primary Care Trust concerned” substitute “the Board”.
 - (5) In paragraph 4 (preliminary approval)—
 - (a) in sub-paragraphs (1) and (4), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (2), for “The Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board”.
 - (6) In paragraph 5 (effect of proposals on existing services)—
 - (a) in sub-paragraph (1)(a)—
 - (i) for “the Primary Care Trust”, in the first place it appears, substitute “the Board”, and
 - (ii) for “the area of the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the area concerned”,
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (1)(b), for the words from “supplied” to the end substitute “prepared under sub-paragraph (3)”,
 - (c) in sub-paragraph (3)—

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (i) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”,
 - (ii) for “the area of another Primary Care Trust” substitute “another area”, and
 - (iii) for “consult that other Primary Care Trust about” substitute “prepare an assessment of the likely effect on those services of the implementation of”, and
 - (d) omit sub-paragraph (4).
- (7) In paragraph 7 (making a scheme)—
- (a) in sub-paragraphs (1), (2) and (4), for “the Primary Care Trust concerned” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (1), for “the Primary Care Trust must” substitute “the Board must”.
- (8) Any pilot scheme under Chapter 2 of Part 7 of the National Health Service Act 2006 having effect immediately before the commencement of this paragraph is to continue to have effect as if it had been established by the Board; and nothing in this paragraph or paragraphs 68 to 75 affects the validity of anything done under or for the purposes of the scheme.

Commencement Information

I113 Sch. 4 para. 92 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 93 (1) Schedule 12 (LPS schemes) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 1 (provision of local pharmaceutical services)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)—
 - (i) for “Primary Care Trusts” substitute “The Board or the Secretary of State”, and
 - (ii) omit “or Strategic Health Authorities”,
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (2)—
 - (i) in paragraph (a), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board or the Secretary of State (the “commissioner””,
 - (ii) in that paragraph, omit “or Strategic Health Authority (the “commissioning body””, and
 - (iii) in paragraph (b), for “the commissioning body” substitute “the commissioner”,
 - (c) omit sub-paragraph (2A),
 - (d) for sub-paragraph (2B) substitute—
 - “(2B) The Secretary of State may establish an LPS scheme only where the other party is the Board.
 - (2C) The Board may provide local pharmaceutical services under an LPS scheme only in such circumstances as may be prescribed.”,
 - (e) in each of sub-paragraphs (5) and (6), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (f) in sub-paragraph (5), omit “in its area”.
- (3) In paragraph 2 (designation of priority neighbourhoods or premises)—

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) in each of sub-paragraphs (1) and (2)(b), for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (1), omit “or Strategic Health Authority”.
- (4) In paragraph 3 (regulations)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (2), for “the commissioning body” substitute “the commissioner”, and
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (3)(k)—
 - (i) for “Primary Care Trusts” substitute “the Board or the Secretary of State”, and
 - (ii) omit “or Strategic Health Authorities”.
- (5) In consequence of the repeals made by this paragraph, omit section 29(7), (8)(a) and (c), (10), (12) and (15) of the Health Act 2009.
- (6) Any LPS scheme under Chapter 3 of Part 7 of the National Health Service Act 2006 having effect immediately before the commencement of this paragraph is to continue to have effect as if it had been established by the Board; and nothing in this paragraph or paragraph 76 affects the validity of anything done under or for the purposes of the scheme.

Commencement Information

I114 Sch. 4 para. 93 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

PART 8

CHARGING

- 94 In section 176 (dental charging)—
- (a) in subsection (3), for “a Primary Care Trust or Special Health Authority” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (b) in subsection (4)(a), omit sub-paragraph (i).

Commencement Information

I115 Sch. 4 para. 94 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 95 In section 177 (exemptions from dental charging), in subsection (4), omit paragraph (a).

Commencement Information

I116 Sch. 4 para. 95 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 96 (1) Section 180 (payments in respect of costs of optical appliances) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “him or a relevant body” substitute “the Board”.
 - (3) In subsection (3), in paragraph (a)—

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (a) for “himself or such relevant body as may be prescribed” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (b) for “he or the prescribed body” substitute “the Board”.
- (4) In paragraph (b) of that subsection—
- (a) for “him or such relevant body as may be prescribed” substitute “the Board”, and
 - (b) for “him or by the prescribed body” substitute “the Board”.
- (5) After subsection (6) insert—
- “(6A) The Board may direct a Special Health Authority, or such other body as may be prescribed, to exercise any of the Board's functions under regulations under this section.”
- (6) Omit subsection (10).
- (7) In subsection (11), at the end insert “in accordance with the regulations”.
- (8) Omit subsection (12).
- (9) For the title to section 180 substitute “Payments in respect of costs of optical appliances and sight tests”.

Commencement Information

- I117** Sch. 4 para. 96 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 96 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)
- I118** Sch. 4 para. 96 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 97 (1) Section 181 (provision supplementary to section 180) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3), omit the words from “(whether” to the end.
 - (3) Omit subsection (9).

Commencement Information

- I119** Sch. 4 para. 97 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 98 (1) Section 183 (payment of travelling expenses) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph (a) —
 - (a) after “the Secretary of State” insert “, the Board, a clinical commissioning group,”, and
 - (b) omit “, a Primary Care Trust,”.
 - (3) In paragraph (b)—
 - (a) after “by” insert “the Board,”,
 - (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (c) before the first “to” insert “or a clinical commissioning group”, and
 - (d) omit the words from “and” to “Trust,”.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (4) In paragraph (c)—
- (a) after “by” insert “the Board,”
 - (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (c) before the first “to” insert “or a clinical commissioning group”.

Commencement Information

I120 Sch. 4 para. 98 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 99 In section 185 (charges for more expensive supplies), in subsection (2)—
- (a) after “the Secretary of State,” insert “the Board, a clinical commissioning group, a local authority,” and
 - (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I121 Sch. 4 para. 99 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 100 In section 186 (charges for repairs and replacements in certain cases), in subsection (2)—
- (a) after “the Secretary of State,” insert “the Board, a clinical commissioning group, a local authority,” and
 - (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I122 Sch. 4 para. 100 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 101 In section 187 (charges for designated services or facilities) for the words from “designated” to the end substitute “of a kind mentioned in section 3(1)(d) or (e) (whether provided in pursuance of those provisions or any other provision of this Act)”.

Commencement Information

I123 Sch. 4 para. 101 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 102 In section 188 (sums otherwise payable to those providing services), in subsection (2) —
- (a) after the first “by” insert “the Board or a clinical commissioning group”, and
 - (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I124 Sch. 4 para. 102 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

PART 9

FRAUD ETC.

- 103 (1) Section 195 (compulsory disclosure of documents) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2) for “section 2(1)(b)” substitute “section 2”.
- (3) In subsection (3) —
- (a) for “section 2(1)(b)” substitute “section 2”,
 - (b) in paragraph (a) after “(“NHS services”)” insert “or in arranging for the provision of such services”,
 - (c) in paragraph (d) after “NHS services” insert “or with arranging for the provision of such services”, and
 - (d) in paragraph (f) after “NHS services” insert “or with arranging for the provision of such services”.

Commencement Information

I125 Sch. 4 para. 103 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 104 (1) Section 196 (persons and bodies about which provision is made by Part 10) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2), for “section 28(6)” substitute “section 275(1)”.
- (3) In subsection (3)—
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(za) the Board,
 - (zb) a clinical commissioning group,”
 - (b) omit paragraph (a), and
 - (c) omit paragraph (c).
- (4) After subsection (5) insert—
- “(5A) A “public health service contractor” means any person providing services of any description under arrangements made in the exercise of the public health functions of the Secretary of State or a local authority.”

Commencement Information

I126 Sch. 4 para. 104(1) in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#)

I127 Sch. 4 para. 104(1) in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

I128 Sch. 4 para. 104(2)(3)(a) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#)

I129 Sch. 4 para. 104(2)(3)(b)(c)(4) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 105 (1) Section 197 (notice requiring production of documents) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)(a) after “health service provider” insert “, public health service contractor”.
- (3) In subsection (3)(d) after “health service provider” insert “, public health service contractor”.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I130 Sch. 4 para. 105 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 106 In section 201 (disclosure of information), in subsection (3)(a) for “any of the Secretary of State's functions” substitute “any of the functions of the Secretary of State, the Board, a clinical commissioning group or a local authority”.

Commencement Information

I131 Sch. 4 para. 106 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 107 (1) Section 210 (interpretation of Part 10) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) after “health service provider” insert “, “public health service contractor””.
- (3) In subsection (2)(a)—
- (a) after “in relation to” insert “the Secretary of State, local authorities,” and
- (b) after “health service providers” insert “, public health service contractors”.

Commencement Information

I132 Sch. 4 para. 107 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

PART 10

PROPERTY AND FINANCE

- 108 (1) Section 211 (acquisition, use and maintenance of property) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (4) for “A local social services authority” substitute “A local authority”.
- (3) After that subsection insert—
- “(4A) In subsection (4), “local authority” has the same meaning as in section 2B.”

Commencement Information

I133 Sch. 4 para. 108 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 109 In section 213 (transfers of trust property), in subsection (2)(c)—
- ^{F1}(a)
- (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust.”

Textual Amendments

F1 Sch. 4 para. 109(a) omitted (17.6.2021) by virtue of [NHS \(Charitable Trusts Etc\) Act 2016 \(c. 10\)](#), s. 5(1), [Sch. 1 para. 16\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2021/712](#), reg. 3(c)

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I134 Sch. 4 para. 109(b) in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, **art. 2(2)** (with arts. 7-9)

110 (1) Section 214 (transfer of functions and property to or from special trustees) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

- (a) after the first “by” insert “the Board, a clinical commissioning group,”, and
- (b) omit “a Primary Care trust,”.

(3) In subsection (3)(a)—

- ^{F2}(a)
- (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust,”.

Textual Amendments

F2 Sch. 4 para. 110(3)(a) omitted (17.6.2021) by virtue of NHS (Charitable Trusts Etc) Act 2016 (c. 10), s. 5(1), **Sch. 1 para. 16(a)**; S.I. 2021/712, reg. 3(c)

Commencement Information

I135 Sch. 4 para. 110(1) in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by S.I. 2012/1831, **art. 2(2)**

I136 Sch. 4 para. 110(1) in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2013/160, **art. 2(2)** (with arts. 7-9)

I137 Sch. 4 para. 110(2)(a) in force at 1.10.2012 by S.I. 2012/1831, **art. 2(2)**

I138 Sch. 4 para. 110(2)(b)(3)(b) in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2013/160, **art. 2(2)** (with arts. 7-9)

111 (1) Section 215 (trustees and property under section 222) is amended as follows.

(2) Omit subsection (2)(b) and the preceding “and”.

(3) In subsection (3)—

- ^{F3}(a)
- (b) omit paragraph (a).

(4) In subsection (4)—

- (a) after the second “and” insert “the Board, clinical commissioning group,”,
- (b) omit “the Primary Care Trust,” (in each place it occurs), and
- (c) after the second “by” insert “the Board, clinical commissioning group,”.

Textual Amendments

F3 Sch. 4 para. 111(3)(a) omitted (17.6.2021) by virtue of NHS (Charitable Trusts Etc) Act 2016 (c. 10), s. 5(1), **Sch. 1 para. 16(a)**; S.I. 2021/712, reg. 3(c)

Commencement Information

I139 Sch. 4 para. 111(1) in force at 1.10.2012 by S.I. 2012/1831, **art. 2(2)**

I140 Sch. 4 para. 111(1) in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2013/160, **art. 2(2)** (with arts. 7-9)

I141 Sch. 4 para. 111(2)(3)(b)(4)(b) in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, **art. 2(2)** (with arts. 7-9)

I142 Sch. 4 para. 111(4)(a)(c) in force at 1.10.2012 by S.I. 2012/1831, **art. 2(2)**

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- 112 In section 216 (application of trust property: further provisions), in subsection (3), after “or 214” insert “of this Act or section 300 or 302 of the Health and Social Care Act 2012”.

Commencement Information

- I143** Sch. 4 para. 112 in force at 1.7.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1319](#), **art. 2(3)**
I144 Sch. 4 para. 112 in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

- 113 In section 217 (trusts: supplementary provisions), in subsection (1)—
^{F4}(a)
(b) omit paragraph (f), and
(c) omit paragraph (g).

Textual Amendments

- F4** Sch. 4 para. 113(a) omitted (17.6.2021) by virtue of [NHS \(Charitable Trusts Etc\) Act 2016 \(c. 10\)](#), s. 5(1), [Sch. 1 para. 16\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2021/712](#), reg. 3(c)

Commencement Information

- I145** Sch. 4 para. 113(b)(c) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 114 In section 218 (private trusts for hospitals), in subsection (4)—
(a) in paragraph (b) omit “or Primary Care Trust”,
(b) in paragraph (c) omit “or Primary Care Trust” (in both places where it occurs), and
(c) for paragraph (d) substitute —
 “(d) in any other case—
 (i) where the hospital is vested in the Secretary of State, the Special Health Authority exercising functions of the Secretary of State in respect of it or, where there is no such Special Health Authority, the Secretary of State,
 (ii) where the Welsh Ministers have functions in respect of the hospital, the Special Health Authority or Local Health Board exercising those functions.”

Commencement Information

- I146** Sch. 4 para. 114 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 115 In section 220 (trust property previously held for general hospital purposes), in subsection (2), after “or 214” insert “of this Act or section 300 or 302 of the Health and Social Care Act 2012”.

Commencement Information

- I147** Sch. 4 para. 115 in force at 1.7.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1319](#), **art. 2(3)**

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

I148 Sch. 4 para. 115 in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

- 116 (1) Section 222 (power to raise money) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the appropriate authority”.
- (3) After subsection (3) insert—
- “(3A) In subsection (3) “appropriate authority” means—
- (a) in relation to a clinical commissioning group, the Board, and
- (b) in relation to any other body to which this section applies, the Secretary of State.”
- (4) In subsection (9), for “section 224 or 226” substitute “section 225”.

Commencement Information

I149 Sch. 4 para. 116 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 117 (1) In section 223 (formation of companies), in each of subsections (1), (2) and (5) after “Secretary of State” insert “or the Board”.
- (2) After that section insert—

“223A Application of section 223 to clinical commissioning groups

- (1) Section 223 applies in relation to a clinical commissioning group as it applies in relation to the Board.
- (2) But the powers conferred by that section are exercisable by a clinical commissioning group only for the purpose of securing improvement—
- (a) in the physical and mental health of the people for whom it has responsibility for the purposes of section 3, or
- (b) in the prevention, diagnosis and treatment of illness in such people.”

Commencement Information

I150 Sch. 4 para. 117(1) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I151 Sch. 4 para. 117(2) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 118 Omit section 224 (means of meeting expenditure of Strategic Health Authorities).

Commencement Information

I152 Sch. 4 para. 118 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 119 (1) Section 226 (financial duties of Strategic Health Authorities and Special Health Authorities) is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit subsection (1).
- (3) In subsection (3) —
- (a) omit “Strategic Health Authority or”, and

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) for “subsection (1) or (2)” substitute “subsection (2)”.
- (4) In subsection (4) omit “Strategic Health Authority or” (in each place where it occurs).
- (5) In subsection (5) omit “Strategic Health Authority or”.
- (6) In subsection (6) omit “Strategic Health Authority or”.
- (7) In subsection (7)—
 - (a) in paragraph (a) omit “specified Strategic Health Authority or”,
 - (b) omit paragraph (b)(i) and the word “or” immediately following it, and
 - (c) omit paragraph (c)(i) and the word “or” immediately following it, and
 - (d) in the words following paragraph (c) omit “Strategic Health Authority or”.
- (8) In the heading to the section, omit “Strategic Health Authorities and”.

Commencement Information

I153 Sch. 4 para. 119 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 120 (1) Section 227 (resource limits for Strategic Health Authorities and Special Health Authorities) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), omit “Strategic Health Authority and each”.
 - (3) In subsection (2)(b) omit “Strategic Health Authority or”.
 - (4) In subsection (3) omit “Strategic Health Authority or”.
 - (5) In subsection (4) for “subsections (1) and (2)” substitute “subsection (2)”.
 - (6) In the heading to the section, omit “Strategic Health Authorities and”.

Commencement Information

I154 Sch. 4 para. 120 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 121 Omit sections 228 to 231 (funding of Primary Care Trusts etc).

Commencement Information

I155 Sch. 4 para. 121 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 122 In section 234 (special arrangement as to payment of remuneration), omit subsection (4).

Commencement Information

I156 Sch. 4 para. 122 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 123 (1) Section 236 (payment for medical examination before application for admission to hospital under the Mental Health Act) is amended as follows.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (2) In subsection (1), for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the prescribed clinical commissioning group”.
- (3) In subsection (2)(b)—
- (a) after “report made” insert “—
 - (i),
 - (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust,”
 - (c) before “NHS trust” insert “an”, and
 - (d) at the end insert “, or
 - (ii) pursuant to arrangements made by the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group, or
 - (iii) pursuant to arrangements made in the exercise (by any person) of the public health functions of the Secretary of State or a local authority.”

Commencement Information

I157 Sch. 4 para. 123 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 123 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)

I158 Sch. 4 para. 123 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 124 Omit Schedule 14 (further provision about expenditure of Primary Care Trusts).

Commencement Information

I159 Sch. 4 para. 124 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 125 (1) Schedule 15 (accounts and audits) is amended as follows.

- (2) In paragraph 1(1)—
- (a) omit paragraph (a),
 - (b) omit paragraph (c), and
 - (c) omit paragraph (g).
- (3) In paragraph 5, omit sub-paragraph (2).
- (4) Omit paragraph 7.
- (5) In paragraph 8(3) omit “or 7”.
- (6) Omit paragraph 9.

Commencement Information

I160 Sch. 4 para. 125(1)-(3) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 4, 5, 7-9](#))

I161 Sch. 4 para. 125(4)-(6) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [art. 11\(1\)](#))

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

PART 11

PUBLIC INVOLVEMENT AND SCRUTINY

- 126 (1) Section 242 (public involvement and consultation) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1A)—
- (a) omit paragraph (a), and
 - (b) omit paragraph (b).
- (3) Omit subsections (4) and (5).

Commencement Information

I162 Sch. 4 para. 126 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 127 Omit sections 242A and 242B (duties of Strategic Health Authorities in relation to involvement of users).

Commencement Information

I163 Sch. 4 para. 127 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

PART 12

MISCELLANEOUS

- 128 After section 254 insert—

*“Support functions of the Secretary of State
Support functions of the Secretary of State*

- 254A**) The Secretary of State may, for the purpose of assisting any person exercising functions in relation to the health service or providing services for its purposes—
- (a) provide (or otherwise make available) to the person goods, materials or other facilities;
 - (b) facilitate the recruitment and management of the person's staff;
 - (c) develop or operate information or communication systems;
 - (d) do such other things to facilitate or support the carrying out of the person's functions or other activities as the Secretary of State considers appropriate;
 - (e) arrange for any other person to do anything mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (d) or to assist the Secretary of State in doing any such thing.
- (2) The power conferred by subsection (1)(a) includes power to purchase goods and materials for the purpose of providing them or making them available.
- (3) The Secretary of State may, in connection with anything done under subsection (1), make available the services of any person employed by the Secretary of State.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (4) The powers conferred by this section may be exercised on such terms, including terms as to the making of payments to or by the Secretary of State, as may be agreed.
- (5) In this section, “the health service” does not include that part of the health service that is provided in pursuance of the public health functions of the Secretary of State or local authorities.”

Commencement Information

I164 Sch. 4 para. 128 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 129 (1) Section 256 (power of Primary Care Trusts to make payments towards expenditure on community services) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board or a clinical commissioning group”.
 - (3) In subsection (3)—
 - (a) for “A Primary Care Trust” substitute “The Board or a clinical commissioning group”, and
 - (b) for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board or (as the case may be) the clinical commissioning group”.
 - (4) After subsection (5) insert—
 - “(5A) The Secretary of State may by directions to the Board specify the minimum amount which the Board must spend in a financial year in making payments under—
 - (a) this section;
 - (b) subsection (1) of this section;
 - (c) subsection (3) of this section.
 - (5B) The Secretary of State may by directions to the Board specify—
 - (a) a body or description of bodies to whom payments under subsection (1) or (3), or under either or both of those subsections, must be made by the Board in a financial year;
 - (b) functions or activities, or descriptions of functions or activities, in respect of which such payments must be made by the Board in a financial year;
 - (c) the minimum amount which the Board must spend in a financial year in making such payments—
 - (i) to a body or description of bodies specified in relation to the year under paragraph (a);
 - (ii) in respect of functions or activities, or descriptions of functions or activities, specified in relation to the year under paragraph (b);
 - (iii) to a body or description of bodies specified in relation to the year under paragraph (a) in respect of functions or activities or descriptions of functions or activities so specified under paragraph (b).”

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

- I165** Sch. 4 para. 129 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 129 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)
- I166** Sch. 4 para. 129 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 130 In section 257 (payments in respect of voluntary organisations under section 256), in subsection (2) for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the Board or the clinical commissioning group”.

Commencement Information

- I167** Sch. 4 para. 130 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 131 (1) Section 258 (university clinical teaching and research) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) for “The Secretary of State must exercise his functions under this Act” substitute “The functions under this Act of the Secretary of State, the Board and each clinical commissioning group must be exercised”, and
- (b) for “he” substitute “the Secretary of State, the Board or the clinical commissioning group (as the case may be)”.
- (3) In subsection (2), in paragraph (a)—
- (a) after “exercisable by” insert “the Board,”,
- (b) after “a” insert “clinical commissioning group,”,
- (c) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” and
- (d) omit “Primary Care Trust,”.

Commencement Information

- I168** Sch. 4 para. 131 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 132 (1) Section 259 (sale of medical practices) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (4), in paragraph (e), for “section 83(2)(b)” substitute “section 83(2)”.
- (3) After that subsection insert—
- “(4A) The reference in subsection (4)(e) to arrangements under section 83(2) of this Act includes a reference to arrangements made under section 83(2)(b) of this Act before the commencement of paragraph 30 of Schedule 4 to the Health and Social Care Act 2012 (sub-paragraph (2) of which replaces section 83(2)).”
- (4) In subsection (5), in the definition of “relevant area”—
- (a) after ““relevant area”” insert “—
- (a)”, and
- (b) at the end insert “;

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (b) in relation to the Board, in a case where a person has at any time provided or performed services by arrangement or contract with the Board, means the prescribed area (at the prescribed time).”

Commencement Information

I169 Sch. 4 para. 132 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 133 Omit section 268 (persons displaced by health service development), and the cross-heading which precedes it.

Commencement Information

I170 Sch. 4 para. 133 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 134 In section 271 (territorial limit of exercise of functions), in the words in brackets in subsection (3)(a), after “directions to” insert “certain”.

Commencement Information

I171 Sch. 4 para. 134 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 135 After section 271 insert—

“271A Services to be treated as services of the Crown for certain purposes

- (1) Services to which this section applies are to be treated as services of the Crown for the purposes of—
- (a) Schedule 1 to the Registered Designs Act 1949 (provisions as to the use of registered designs for the services of the Crown etc.), and
 - (b) sections 55 to 59 of the Patents Act 1977 (use of patented inventions for the services of the Crown).
- (2) This section applies to services provided in pursuance of—
- (a) the functions of the Board or a clinical commissioning group under section 3, 3A, 3B or 4 or Schedule 1, or
 - (b) the public health functions of a local authority.”

Commencement Information

I172 Sch. 4 para. 135 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 136 (1) Section 272 (orders, regulations, rules and directions) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3)—
 - (a) omit paragraph (b), and
 - (b) omit paragraph (d).
 - (3) In subsection (5)—
 - (a) omit “a PCT order, or”, and

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (b) before paragraph (a) insert—
“(za) section 14A(1),”.

Commencement Information

I173 Sch. 4 para. 136 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 137 (1) Section 273 (further provision about orders and directions) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3) for “by a Strategic Health Authority” substitute “by the Board”.
- (3) In subsection (4)(c)(ii)—
- (a) after “8,” insert “13Z1,” and
- (b) omit “15,”.

Commencement Information

I174 Sch. 4 para. 137 in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [art. 12](#))

- 138 (1) Section 275 (interpretation) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) before the definition of “dental practitioner” insert—
- ““the Board” means the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
- “clinical commissioning group” means a body established under section 14D of this Act,”
- (b) in the definition of “health service hospital” omit “a Primary Care Trust,” and
- (c) after the definition of “modifications” insert—
- ““NHS body” means—
- (a) the Board,
- (b) a clinical commissioning group,
- (c) a Special Health Authority,
- (d) an NHS trust,
- (e) an NHS foundation trust, and
- (f) a Local Health Board.”
- (3) In subsection (3)—
- (a) omit “or 15”,
- (b) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” (in both places where it occurs), and
- (c) omit “Primary Care Trust or” (in both places where it occurs).
- (4) Until the commencement of section 33, the definition of “NHS body” in section 275 of the National Health Service Act 2006 has effect as if it included a reference to a Strategic Health Authority.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (5) Until the commencement of section 34, the definition of “NHS body” in section 275 of the National Health Service Act 2006 has effect as if it included a reference to a Primary Care Trust.

Commencement Information

- I175** Sch. 4 para. 138(1) (2)(b) (3) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))
I176 Sch. 4 para. 138(2)(a)(c)(4)(5) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [art. 13](#))

- 139 (1) Section 276 (index of defined expressions) is amended as follows.
 (2) Omit the entry relating to “NHS body”.
 (3) After the entry for “LPS scheme” insert—

“NHS constitution	section 1B(2)”
-------------------	----------------

- (4) Omit the entry relating to “PCT order”.
 (5) After the entry relating to “provider, in relation to an NHS contract” insert—

“public health functions of the Secretary of State	section 1H(5)(a)
--	------------------

public health authorities	of local authorities section 1H(5)(b)”.
---------------------------	---

Commencement Information

- I177** Sch. 4 para. 139(1) in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**
I178 Sch. 4 para. 139(1) in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))
I179 Sch. 4 para. 139(2) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**
I180 Sch. 4 para. 139(3)-(5) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

SCHEDULE 5

Section 55(2)

PART 1: AMENDMENTS OF OTHER ENACTMENTS

Voluntary Hospitals (Paying Patients) Act 1936 (c. 17)

- 1 In section 1 of the Voluntary Hospitals (Paying Patients) Act 1936 (definitions)—
 (a) in the definition of “voluntary hospital”, for “, NHS foundation trust or a Primary Care Trust” substitute “or an NHS foundation trust”, and
 (b) omit the definition of “Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

- I181** Sch. 5 para. 1 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

National Assistance Act 1948 (c. 29)

2 The National Assistance Act 1948 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I182 Sch. 5 para. 2 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

3 (1) Section 24 (local authority's liability for provision of accommodation) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsections (6A) and (6B)—

- (a) after “by a” insert “clinical commissioning group or”, and
- (b) omit “Primary Care Trust or”.

(3) After subsection (6B), insert—

“(6C) The references in subsections (6A) and (6B) to a clinical commissioning group are, so far as necessary for the purposes of regulations under section 117(2E) of the Mental Health Act 1983, to be read as references to the National Health Service Commissioning Board.”

Commencement Information

I183 Sch. 5 para. 3 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

4 In section 26 (provision of accommodation in premises maintained by voluntary organisations), in subsection (1C)—

- (a) after “such” insert “clinical commissioning group or”, and
- (b) omit “Primary Care Trust or”.

Commencement Information

I184 Sch. 5 para. 4 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

PROSPECTIVE

Reserve and Auxiliary Forces (Protection of Civil Interests) Act 1951 (c. 65)

5 In Part 1 of Schedule 2 to the Reserve and Auxiliary Forces (Protection of Civil Interests) Act 1951 (capacities in respect of which payments under Part 5 of the Act may be made, and paying authorities), in paragraph 15—

- (a) in the first column (headed “capacity”), after “Officer of” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group,”,
- (b) in that column, omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”,
- (c) in the second column (headed “paying authority”), after “The” insert “National Health Service Commissioning Board, clinical commissioning group,” and
- (d) in that column, omit “Strategic Health Authority,”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

- I185** Sch. 5 para. 5(a)(c) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**
I186 Sch. 5 para. 5(b)(d) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Public Records Act 1958 (c. 51)

- 6 In Schedule 1 to the Public Records Act 1958 (bodies the records of which are public records), in paragraph 3(2) in the Table, in the second column of the first entry relating to the Department of Health—
- (a) after “Authorities including” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, clinical commissioning groups,”,
 - (b) after “records of trust property passing to” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group,”,
 - (c) after “section 161 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006” (in the second place it occurs) insert “or section 300 of the Health and Social Care Act 2012”,
 - (d) after “or held by” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group or”, and
 - (e) after “that Act, or” (in the second place where it occurs) insert “by virtue of section 2 and section 13X of, or paragraph 20 of Schedule 1A to, that Act, or under”.

Commencement Information

- I187** Sch. 5 para. 6 in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [art. 14](#))

Public Bodies (Admission to Meetings) Act 1960 (c. 67)

- 7 In the Schedule to the Public Bodies (Admission to Meetings) Act 1960 (bodies to which the Act applies), in paragraph 1—
- (a) omit paragraph (ea),
 - (b) before paragraph (g) insert—
 - “(fa) the National Health Service Commissioning Board, except as regards the exercise of functions under the National Health Service (Service Committees and Tribunal) Regulations 1992, or any regulations amending or replacing those Regulations;”, and
 - (c) omit paragraph (gg).

Commencement Information

- I188** Sch. 5 para. 7(a)(c) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))
I189 Sch. 5 para. 7(b) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (c. 13)

- 8 In Schedule 3 to the Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (matters not subject to investigation), in paragraph 8—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)—
 - (i) after “Secretary of State by” insert “a local authority, the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group”,
 - (ii) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (iii) omit “, a Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (2)—
 - (i) after “action taken by” insert “a local authority, the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group or”,
 - (ii) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (iii) omit “or Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

- I190** Sch. 5 para. 8(a)(i)(b)(i) in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**
- I191** Sch. 5 para. 8(a)(i)(b)(i) in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-10](#), [Sch. paras. 1, 2](#))
- I192** Sch. 5 para. 8(a)(ii)(iii)(b)(ii)(iii) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-10](#), [Sch. paras. 1, 2](#))

Abortion Act 1967 (c. 87)

- 9 In section 1 of the Abortion Act 1967 (location of treatment for termination of pregnancy), in subsection (3) omit “a Primary Care Trust or”.

Commencement Information

- I193** Sch. 5 para. 9 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Leasehold Reform Act 1967 (c. 88)

- 10 In section 28 of the Leasehold Reform Act 1967 (land required for public purposes)—
- (a) in subsection (5), in paragraph (d)—
 - (i) after “to” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, any clinical commissioning group,”,
 - (ii) omit “any Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (iii) omit “, any Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (b) in subsection (6), in paragraph (c)—
 - (i) after “in the case of” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group,”,
 - (ii) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (iii) omit “, Primary Care Trust”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I194 Sch. 5 para. 10(a)(i)(b)(i) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I195 Sch. 5 para. 10(a)(ii)(iii)(b)(ii)(iii) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Health Services and Public Health Act 1968 (c. 46)

11 The Health Services and Public Health Act 1968 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I196 Sch. 5 para. 11 in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I197 Sch. 5 para. 11 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

12 (1) Section 63 (provision of instruction for officers of hospital authorities etc.) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

- (a) after “servants of” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group,”,
- (b) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,” and
- (c) omit “, Primary Care Trust”.

(3) In subsection (2)—

- (a) in paragraph (a) before “or the council” insert “, the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group”, and
- (b) in paragraph (b) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the National Health Service Commissioning Board”.

(4) In subsection (5A)—

- (a) omit “Strategic Health Authority” (in each place where it occurs), and
- (b) omit “, Primary Care Trust” (in each place where it occurs).

(5) In subsection (5B)—

- (a) omit paragraph (za), and
- (b) omit paragraph (bb).

Commencement Information

I198 Sch. 5 para. 12(1) in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I199 Sch. 5 para. 12(1) in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

I200 Sch. 5 para. 12(2)(a) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I201 Sch. 5 para. 12(2)(b)(c)(3)-(5) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

13 In section 64 (financial assistance to certain voluntary organisations), in subsection (3)(b)—

- (a) after “City of London” insert “or a service for the provision of which the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- group has, by virtue of the National Health Service Act 2006, a duty or power to make arrangements”,
- (b) for “a Primary Care Trust or local Health Board are” substitute “a local Health Board is”,
 - (c) omit “Chapter 1 of Part 7 of the National Health Service Act 2006, or”, and
 - (d) omit “Primary Care Trust or”.

Commencement Information

I202 Sch. 5 para. 13 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Employers' Liability (Compulsory Insurance) Act 1969 (c. 57)

- 14 In section 3 of the Employers' Liability (Compulsory Insurance) Act 1969 (employers exempted from insurance), in subsection (2)(a)—
- (a) after “National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990,” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006,”, and
 - (b) omit “, a Primary Care Trust established under section 18 of the National Health Service Act 2006”.

Commencement Information

I203 Sch. 5 para. 14(b) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Local Authority Social Services Act 1970 (c. 42)

- 15 In Schedule 1 to the Local Authority Social Services Act 1970 (social services functions) in the entry relating to the Children Act 1989, in the column headed “Nature of functions”—
- (a) after “accommodated” insert “pursuant to arrangements made by the Secretary of State, the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group under the National Health Service Act 2006 or”, and
 - (b) omit “Primary Care Trusts,”.

Commencement Information

I204 Sch. 5 para. 15 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Chronically Sick and Disabled Persons Act 1970 (c. 44)

- 16 (1) Section 17 of the Chronically Sick and Disabled Persons Act 1970 (separation of younger from older patients) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) for “The Secretary of State” substitute “The Welsh Ministers”.
 - (3) In subsection (2) (as substituted by the National Health Service Reorganisation Act 1973)—

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (a) for “The Secretary of State” substitute “The Welsh Ministers”,
- (b) for “each House of Parliament” substitute “the National Assembly for Wales”,
- (c) for “as he considers” substitute “as they consider”, and
- (d) for “in him” substitute “in them”.

Commencement Information

I205 Sch. 5 para. 16 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70)

- 17 In section 113 of the Local Government Act 1972 (placing of staff of local authorities at disposal of certain persons)—
- (a) in subsection (1A)—
 - (i) after “with” insert “the Secretary of State, the National Health Service Commissioning Board,”,
 - (ii) after “Local Health Board,” (in each place where it occurs) insert “clinical commissioning group,”,
 - (iii) omit “Primary Care Trust,” (in each place where it occurs),
 - (iv) in paragraph (a), after “disposal of” insert “the Secretary of State, the National Health Service Commissioning Board,”, and
 - (v) in paragraph (b), after “employed by” insert “the Secretary of State, the National Health Service Commissioning Board,”, and
 - (b) in subsection (4)—
 - (i) after “above”, insert “ “Secretary of State” means the Secretary of State in relation to the exercise of functions under section 2A or 2B of, or paragraph 7C, 8 or 12 of Schedule 1 to, the National Health Service Act 2006,”,
 - (ii) before “ “NHS trust”” insert “ “clinical commissioning group” means a body established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006, and” , and
 - (iii) omit the words from “and “Primary Care Trust”” to the end.

Commencement Information

I206 Sch. 5 para. 17 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Local Government Act 1974 (c. 7)

- 18 In section 26 of the Local Government Act 1974 (matters subject to investigation by Local Commissioner), in subsection (1), after paragraph (c) insert—
- “(d) an alleged or apparent failure in a service provided by the authority in pursuance of arrangements under section 7A of the National Health Service Act 2006;
 - (e) an alleged or apparent failure to provide a service in pursuance of such arrangements.”

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I207 Sch. 5 para. 18 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Health and Safety at Work etc. Act 1974 (c. 37)

- 19 (1) Section 60 of the Health and Safety at Work etc. Act 1974 (supplementary provision about the Employment Medical Advisory Service) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) for “each Primary Care Trust and Local Health Board” substitute “the National Health Service Commissioning Board or each clinical commissioning group (in relation to England) and each Local Health Board (in relation to Wales)”.
- (3) In subsection (2)—
- (a) omit “for one of their”, and
 - (b) for “each” to “its” substitute “the National” to “arranges”.

Commencement Information

I208 Sch. 5 para. 19 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24)

- 20 In Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (offices disqualifying for membership of the House)—
- (a) omit the entry relating to the chairman or any member of a Primary Care Trust,
 - (b) in the entry relating to the chairman or any member of any Strategic Health Authority or Special Health Authority, omit “Strategic Health Authority, or”, and
 - (c) at the appropriate place insert— “ Chairman or non-executive member of the National Health Service Commissioning Board. ”

Commencement Information

I209 Sch. 5 para. 20(a)(b) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

I210 Sch. 5 para. 20(c) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

Acquisition of Land Act 1981 (c. 67)

- 21 The Acquisition of Land Act 1981 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I211 Sch. 5 para. 21 in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I212 Sch. 5 para. 21 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 22 In section 16 (land excluded from compulsory purchase), in subsection (3)—

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (a) after paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(aa) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;
 - (ab) a clinical commissioning group established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006;”,
 - and”
- (b) omit paragraph (c).

Commencement Information

I213 Sch. 5 para. 22(a) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I214 Sch. 5 para. 22(b) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 23 In section 17 (special parliamentary procedure applying to compulsory purchase orders concerning certain land), in subsection (4) in the definition of “statutory undertakers”—
- (a) omit paragraph (ad), and
 - (b) before paragraph (b) insert—
 - “(ae) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
 - (af) a clinical commissioning group established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006,”.

Commencement Information

I215 Sch. 5 para. 23(a) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

I216 Sch. 5 para. 23(b) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

Mental Health Act 1983 (c. 20)

- 24 The Mental Health Act 1983 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I217 Sch. 5 para. 24 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 25 In section 19 (regulations as to transfers of patients), in subsection (3)—
- (a) for “NHS foundation trust”, in each place it appears, substitute “NHS foundation trust or”, and
 - (b) omit “or Primary Care Trust” in each place it appears.

Commencement Information

I218 Sch. 5 para. 25 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 26 In section 23 (discharge of patients), in subsection (5)(a)—
- (a) for “, Special Health Authority”, in each place it appears, substitute “or Special Health Authority”,
 - (b) omit “or Primary Care Trust” in each place it appears, and
 - (c) omit “, trust” in each place it appears.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I219 Sch. 5 para. 26 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 27 In section 32 (regulations for purposes of Part 2 of that Act), in subsection (3), omit “, Primary Care Trusts”.

Commencement Information

I220 Sch. 5 para. 27 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 28 (1) Section 39 (power of court to request information from hospitals) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) omit “Primary Care Trust or” in each place it appears,
 - (b) in paragraph (a), after the first “the” insert “clinical commissioning group or”,
 - (c) in paragraph (b), at the beginning insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board or”,
 - (d) in that paragraph, after “or any other” insert “clinical commissioning group or”,
 - (e) after “such information as that” insert “clinical commissioning group or”,
 - (f) after “Local Health Board or”, in each place it appears, insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board or the”, and
 - (g) after “order, and that” insert “clinical commissioning group or”.
- (3) After subsection (1) insert—
- “(1ZA) A request under this section to the National Health Service Commissioning Board may relate only to services or facilities the provision of which the Board arranges.”
- (4) In consequence of the repeals made by sub-paragraph (2), omit paragraph 46 of Schedule 2 to the National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002.

Commencement Information

I221 Sch. 5 para. 28 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 29 In section 134 (patients' correspondence), in subsection (3)(e)—
- (a) at the beginning insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group,”,
 - (b) omit “Strategic Health Authority,”,
 - (c) for “, Special Health Authority” substitute “or Special Health Authority”, and
 - (d) omit “or Primary Care Trust”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I222 Sch. 5 para. 29 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 30 In section 139 (protection for acts done in pursuance of that Act), in subsection (4) —
- (a) after “the Secretary of State or against” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group,”,
 - (b) omit “Strategic Health Authority,”,
 - (c) for “, Special Health Authority” substitute “or Special Health Authority”, and
 - (d) omit “or Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I223 Sch. 5 para. 30 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-10](#), [Sch. paras. 1, 3](#))

- 31 (1) In section 145 (interpretation), in subsection (1)—
- (a) in the definition of “the managers”, in paragraph (a)—
 - (i) after “the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006,” (in the second place where it occurs) insert “the Secretary of State where the Secretary is responsible for the administration of the hospital or”,
 - (ii) omit “Primary Care Trust,”, and
 - (iii) omit “Strategic Health Authority,”,
 - (b) in paragraph (bb) of that definition, omit “a Primary Care Trust or”,
 - (c) omit the definition of “Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (d) omit the definition of “Strategic Health Authority”.
- (2) In consequence of the repeals made by sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) omit paragraph 49 of Schedule 2 to the National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002, and
 - (b) omit paragraph 70(e) and (g) of Schedule 1 to the National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006.

Commencement Information

I224 Sch. 5 para. 31 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Public Health (Control of Disease) Act 1984 (c. 22)

- 32 In section 13 of the Public Health (Control of Disease) Act 1984 (regulations for control of certain diseases), in subsection (4)(a)—
- (a) omit “Strategic Health Authorities,”, and
 - (b) omit “, Primary Care Trusts”.

Commencement Information

I225 Sch. 5 para. 32 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Dentists Act 1984 (c. 24)

33 The Dentists Act 1984 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I226 Sch. 5 para. 33 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

34 In section 26B (guidance for dentists), in subsection (8) omit paragraph (a).

Commencement Information

I227 Sch. 5 para. 34 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

35 In section 36M (guidance for dental care professionals), in subsection (8) omit paragraph (a).

Commencement Information

I228 Sch. 5 para. 35 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

36 In section 40 (definition of “business of dentistry”), in subsection (2)(aa)—

- (a) omit “under section 92 of the National Health Service Act 2006 or”,
- (b) after “section 100” insert “of the National Health Service Act 2006 or an agreement under section 107”,
- (c) omit “under section 50 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 or”, and
- (d) after “section 57” insert “of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 or an agreement under section 64”.

Commencement Information

I229 Sch. 5 para. 36 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

37 In section 50D (rules: consultation), in subsection (4) omit paragraph (a).

Commencement Information

I230 Sch. 5 para. 37 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Disabled Persons (Services, Consultation and Representation) Act 1986 (c. 33)

38 The Disabled Persons (Services, Consultation and Representation) Act 1986 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I231 Sch. 5 para. 38 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

39 In section 2 (rights of authorised representatives of disabled persons)—

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (a) in subsection (5) in paragraph (a)—
 - (i) after “hospital accommodation” (in the first place it occurs) insert “provided pursuant to arrangements made by the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group under the National Health Service Act 2006 or”,
 - (ii) for “the Secretary of State under section (3)(1)(a)” substitute “the Secretary of State under section 2A or 2B”, and
 - (iii) omit “by a Primary Care Trust established under that Act,”,
- (b) in subsection (7) in paragraph (a), after “provision of services” insert “, or the arrangement for the provision of services,”, and
- (c) in subsection (9) in the definition of “health authority”, in paragraph (a)—
 - (i) after “means” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group or”,
 - (ii) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (iii) omit “or a Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I232 Sch. 5 para. 39 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 40 In section 7 (persons discharged from hospital), in subsection (9)—
- (a) in the definition of “health authority”, in paragraph (a) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “a clinical commissioning group”, and
 - (b) in the definition of “the managers”—
 - (i) in paragraph (a)(i) for “, an NHS foundation trust or a Primary Care Trust” substitute “or an NHS foundation trust”,
 - (ii) in the words following paragraph (a)(iii) after “means the” insert “Secretary of State where the Secretary of State is responsible for the administration of the hospital, or means the”,
 - (iii) in those words omit “Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (iv) omit paragraph (bb).

Commencement Information

I233 Sch. 5 para. 40 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 41 In section 11 (reports to Parliament)—
- (a) in subsection (1ZA) omit “subsection (1ZB) extends to England and Wales only and”, and
 - (b) omit subsection (1ZB).

Commencement Information

I234 Sch. 5 para. 41 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 42 In section 16 (interpretation), in subsection (1)—
- (a) omit the definition of “Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (b) omit the definition of “Strategic Health Authority”.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I235 Sch. 5 para. 42 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Dartford-Thurrock Crossing Act 1988 (c. 20)

- 43 In section 19 of the Dartford-Thurrock Crossing Act 1988 (exemption from tolls), in paragraph (b)—
- (a) omit “a Strategic Health Authority established under section 13 of the National Health Service Act 2006,”,
 - (b) for “that Act” substitute “the National Health Service Act 2006”, and
 - (c) omit “a Primary Care Trust established under section 18 of the National Health Service Act 2006,”.

Commencement Information

I236 Sch. 5 para. 43 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (c. 48)

- 44 In section 48 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (material communicated to the Crown in the course of public business), in subsection (6)—
- (a) after “the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990,” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006,”, and
 - (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust established under section 18 of the National Health Service Act 2006,”.

Commencement Information

I237 Sch. 5 para. 44(a) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I238 Sch. 5 para. 44(b) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49)

- 45 In section 7 of the Health and Medicines Act 1988 (extension of powers for financing health service), in subsection (3)(i) omit the words from the second “the” to “trust, or”.

Commencement Information

I239 Sch. 5 para. 45 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Road Traffic Act 1988 (c. 52)

- 46 In section 144 of the Road Traffic Act 1988 (exception to requirement for third party insurance), in subsection (2)(da) omit “by a Primary Care Trust established under section 18 of the National Health Service Act 2006”.

Commencement Information

I240 Sch. 5 para. 46 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Children Act 1989 (c. 41)

- 47 The Children Act 1989 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I241 Sch. 5 para. 47 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 48 In section 21 (provision of accommodation for children in police protection etc), in subsection (3)—
- (a) for “Secretary of State,” substitute “Secretary of State or”,
 - (b) omit “or a Primary Care Trust” (in each place where it occurs), and
 - (c) after “arrangements made by” insert “the Secretary of State, the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group under the National Health Service Act 2006 or”.

Commencement Information

I242 Sch. 5 para. 48 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 49 In section 24 (persons qualifying for advice and assistance), in subsection (2)—
- (a) in paragraph (d), in sub-paragraph (i) omit “or Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (b) in that paragraph, in sub-paragraph (ii) after “provided” insert “pursuant to arrangements made by the Secretary of State, the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group under the National Health Service Act 2006 or”.

Commencement Information

I243 Sch. 5 para. 49 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-10](#), [Sch. paras. 1, 4](#))

^{F5}50

Textual Amendments

F5 Sch. 5 para. 50 omitted (6.4.2016) by virtue of [The Social Services and Well-being \(Wales\) Act 2014 \(Consequential Amendments\) Regulations 2016 \(S.I. 2016/413\)](#), [regs. 2\(1\)](#), **286**

- 51 In section 27 (co-operation between authorities), in subsection (3)—
- (a) after paragraph (c) insert—

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- “(ca) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;”, and”
- (b) in paragraph (d)—
 - (i) after “any” insert “clinical commissioning group;”, and
 - (ii) omit “, Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I244 Sch. 5 para. 51 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 52 In section 29 (recoupment of cost of providing services), in subsection (8) in paragraph (c)—
- (a) for “Secretary of State,” substitute “Secretary of State or”,
 - (b) omit “or a Primary Care Trust” (in both places where it occurs),
 - (c) after “arrangements made by” insert “the Secretary of State, the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group under the National Health Service Act 2006 or by”, and
 - (d) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”.

Commencement Information

I245 Sch. 5 para. 52 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 53 In section 47 (local authority's duty to investigate), in subsection (11)—
- (a) after paragraph (c) insert—
 - “(ca) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;”, and”
 - (b) in paragraph (d)—
 - (i) after “any” insert “clinical commissioning group;”, and
 - (ii) omit “, Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I246 Sch. 5 para. 53 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 54 In section 80 (inspection of children's homes)—
- (a) in subsection (1), in paragraph (d) —
 - (i) omit “, Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (ii) after “NHS foundation trust” insert “or pursuant to arrangements made by the Secretary of State, the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group under the National Health Service Act 2006”,
 - (b) in subsection (5), in paragraph (e) omit “Primary Care Trust;”, and
 - (c) after that paragraph insert—
 - “(ea) person providing accommodation for a child pursuant to arrangements made by the Secretary of State, the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group under the National Health Service Act 2006;”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I247 Sch. 5 para. 54 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 55 In section 85 (children accommodated by health authorities)—
- (a) in subsection (1) omit “Primary Care Trust,”, and
 - (b) after subsection (2) insert—
 - “(2ZA) Where a child is provided with accommodation—
 - (a) by a body which is not mentioned in subsection (1), and
 - (b) pursuant to arrangements made by the Secretary of State, the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group under the National Health Service Act 2006,

subsections (1) and (2) apply in relation to the Secretary of State, the Board or (as the case may be) the clinical commissioning group as if it were the accommodating authority.”

Commencement Information

I248 Sch. 5 para. 55 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-10](#), [Sch. paras. 1, 4](#))

- 56 (1) Section 105 (interpretation) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) before the definition of “community home” insert—
 - ““clinical commissioning group” means a body established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006;”
 - (b) omit the definition of “Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (c) omit the definition of “Strategic Health Authority”.
- (3) After subsection (7) insert—
- “(7A) References in this Act to a hospital or accommodation made available or provided pursuant to arrangements made by the Secretary of State under the National Health Service Act 2006 are references to a hospital or accommodation made available or provided pursuant to arrangements so made in the exercise of the public health functions of the Secretary of State (within the meaning of that Act).
 - (7B) References in this Act to arrangements made by the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group under the National Health Service Act 2006 include references to arrangements so made by virtue of section 7A of that Act.”

Commencement Information

I249 Sch. 5 para. 56 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (c. 42)

- 57 In section 2 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (politically restricted posts), in subsection (6), after paragraph (za) insert—
- “(zb) the director of public health appointed under section 73A(1) of the National Health Service Act 2006;”.

Commencement Information

I250 Sch. 5 para. 57 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19)

- 58 The National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I251 Sch. 5 para. 58 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 59 In section 47 (assessment of needs for community care services), in subsection (3)—
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert—
- “(za) that there may be a need for the provision to that person, pursuant to arrangements made under the National Health Service Act 2006 by such clinical commissioning group as may be determined in accordance with regulations, of any services (including services that may be provided pursuant to such arrangements by virtue of section 7A of that Act),”
- (b) in paragraph (a), omit “Primary Care Trust or”,
- (c) in that paragraph omit “the National Health Service Act 2006 or”,
- (d) in the text following paragraph (b), omit “Primary Care Trust,” (in both places where it occurs), and
- (e) in that text, before “Health Authority” (in both places it occurs) insert “clinical commissioning group,”.

Commencement Information

I252 Sch. 5 para. 59 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 60 In section 49 (transfer of staff to local authorities), in subsection (4)(b)—
- (a) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” and
- (b) omit “Primary Care Trust,”.

Commencement Information

I253 Sch. 5 para. 60 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 61 In section 60 (removal of crown immunities), in subsection (7)—
- (a) in paragraph (a) omit the words from “a Strategic” to “2006 or”, and

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (b) in paragraph (aa) for “that Act” substitute “the National Health Service Act 2006”.

Commencement Information

I254 Sch. 5 para. 61 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Access to Health Records Act 1990 (c. 23)

- 62 The Access to Health Records Act 1990 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I255 Sch. 5 para. 62 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 63 In section 1, in subsection (2) (meaning of “holder” in relation to a health record)—
- (a) in paragraph (a)—
- (i) for “a Primary Care Trust or” substitute “the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a”, and
- (ii) omit “Trust or”, and
- (b) in paragraph (aa)—
- (i) for “a Primary Care Trust, Strategic Health Authority or” substitute “the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a”, and
- (ii) omit “Trust, Authority or”.

Commencement Information

I256 Sch. 5 para. 63 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-10](#), [Sch. paras. 1, 5](#))

- 64 In section 11 (interpretation)—
- (a) in the definition of “health service body”, in paragraph (a)—
- (i) omit “Strategic Health Authority”,
- (ii) for “, Local” substitute “or Local”, and
- (iii) omit “or Primary Care Trust”,
- (b) omit the definition of “Primary Care Trust”, and
- (c) omit the definition of “Strategic Health Authority”.

Commencement Information

I257 Sch. 5 para. 64 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

London Local Authorities Act 1991 (c. xiii)

- 65 In section 4 of the London Local Authorities Act 1991 (interpretation) in the definition of “establishment for special treatment”, in paragraph (d) for “by a Primary Care Trust established under section 18 of the National Health Service Act 2006” substitute “by any person in pursuance of arrangements made by the National Health Service Commissioning Board or by a clinical commissioning group under

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

the National Health Service Act 2006 (including by virtue of section 7A of that Act”).

Commencement Information

I258 Sch. 5 para. 65 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 (c. 52)

66 In section 279 of the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 (health service practitioners)—

- (a) in subsection (1), in paragraph (a) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the National Health Service Commissioning Board”,
- (b) in that paragraph, after “or” (in the first place it occurs) insert “a”,
- (c) in the words after paragraph (b) in that subsection, omit “authority or”,
- (d) in subsection (2), in paragraph (a) for “a Primary Care Trust, Strategic Health Authority or” substitute “the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a”,
- (e) in paragraph (b) of that subsection, for “a Primary Care Trust or” substitute “the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a”,
- (f) in that paragraph, for “entered into by him with a Primary Care Trust” substitute “entered into by him with the National Health Service Commissioning Board”, and
- (g) in the words after that paragraph, omit “Trust, Authority or.”

Commencement Information

I259 Sch. 5 para. 66 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Health Service Commissioners Act 1993 (c. 46)

67 The Health Service Commissioners Act 1993 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I260 Sch. 5 para. 67 in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I261 Sch. 5 para. 67 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

68 In section 2 (health service bodies subject to investigation), in subsection (1)—

- (a) omit paragraph (a),
- (b) omit paragraph (da), and
- (c) after paragraph (db) insert—
 - “(dc) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
 - (dd) clinical commissioning groups.”

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I262 Sch. 5 para. 68(a)(b) in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 6-9)

I263 Sch. 5 para. 68(c) in force at 1.10.2012 by S.I. 2012/1831, art. 2(2)

- 69 In section 2A (health service providers subject to investigation), in subsection (1)(a) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the National Health Service Commissioning Board”.

Commencement Information

I264 Sch. 5 para. 69 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 6-9)

- 70 (1) Section 14 (reports etc. by the Commissioner) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) at the end of paragraph (c) insert “and”, and
 - (b) omit paragraph (e) and the preceding “and”.
- (3) In subsection (2A)—
- (a) at the end of paragraph (d) insert “and”, and
 - (b) omit paragraph (f) and the preceding “and”.
- (4) In subsection (2C)—
- (a) at the end of paragraph (d) insert “and”, and
 - (b) omit paragraph (f) and the preceding “and”.
- (5) Omit subsection (2E)(e).
- (6) In subsection (2G)—
- (a) at the end of paragraph (c) insert “and”, and
 - (b) omit paragraph (e) and the preceding “and”.

Commencement Information

I265 Sch. 5 para. 70 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 6-9)

Health Authorities Act 1995 (c. 17)

- 71 In Schedule 2 to the Health Authorities Act 1995 (property, rights and liabilities), in paragraph 2—
- (a) in sub-paragraphs (1), (2), (6) and (7) omit “Primary Care Trust,”, and
 - (b) in sub-paragraphs (1), (2), (6) and (7) omit “Strategic Health Authority,”.

Commencement Information

I266 Sch. 5 para. 71 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Employment Rights Act 1996 (c. 18)

72 The Employment Rights Act 1996 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I267 Sch. 5 para. 72 in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I268 Sch. 5 para. 72 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 73 In section 43K (extension of meaning of “worker” etc for Part 4A)—
- (a) in subsection (1)(ba) for “a Primary Care Trust” (in each place where it occurs) substitute “the National Health Service Commissioning Board”,
 - (b) in subsection (1)(c)(i) for “a Primary Care Trust” substitute “the National Health Service Commissioning Board”, and
 - (c) in subsection (2)(aa) for “the Primary Care Trust or” substitute “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, or the”.

Commencement Information

I269 Sch. 5 para. 73 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 74 In section 50 (right to time off for public duties), in subsection (8)—
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(za) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
 - (zb) a clinical commissioning group established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006,”and”
 - (b) in paragraph (b)—
 - (i) omit “a Strategic Health Authority established under section 13 of the National Health Service Act 2006,” and
 - (ii) omit “or a Primary Care Trust established under section 18 of the National Health Service Act 2006,”.

Commencement Information

I270 Sch. 5 para. 74(a) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I271 Sch. 5 para. 74(b) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 75 In section 218 (change of employer), in subsection (10)—
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(za) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
 - (zb) a clinical commissioning group established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006,”
 - (b) omit paragraph (a),
 - (c) in paragraph (b) for “that Act” substitute “the National Health Service Act 2006”,
 - (d) omit paragraph (bb), and

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (e) in paragraph (c) for “that Act” substitute “the National Health Service Act 2006”.

Commencement Information

I272 Sch. 5 para. 75(a) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I273 Sch. 5 para. 75(b)-(e) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Housing Grants, Construction and Regeneration Act 1996 (c. 53)

- 76 In section 3 of the Housing Grants, Construction and Regeneration Act 1996, in subsection (2)(f) (persons ineligible for grants)—
- (a) at the beginning insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group,”,
 - (b) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (c) omit “, Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I274 Sch. 5 para. 76(a) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I275 Sch. 5 para. 76(b)(c) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Education Act 1996 (c. 56)

- 77 The Education Act 1996 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I276 Sch. 5 para. 77 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 78 (1) Section 322 (duty of certain bodies to help local authorities) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
 - (a) after “another local authority,” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group or”,
 - (b) omit “or a Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (c) for “the board, authority or trust” substitute “that body”.
 - (3) In subsection (2), for “An authority, a board or a trust” substitute “A body”.
 - (4) In subsection (3), in paragraph (a)—
 - (a) after “request is made of” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group or”,
 - (b) omit “or Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (c) for “that board or trust” substitute “that body”.
 - (5) In subsection (4)—
 - (a) for “an authority, a board” substitute “a local authority, the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group or a Local Health Board”, and

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) omit “or a trust”.

Commencement Information

I277 Sch. 5 para. 78 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 79 (1) Section 332 (duty of certain NHS bodies to notify parent) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) after “where” insert “a clinical commissioning group,” and
- (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust.”
- (3) In subsection (2) for “trust” (in each place where it occurs) substitute “other body”.
- (4) In subsection (3) for “trust” substitute “other body”.

Commencement Information

I278 Sch. 5 para. 79 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 80 In section 579 (general interpretation), in subsection (1) in the definition of “school buildings” in paragraph (c) for the words from “for enabling” to “functions” substitute “for the carrying out of functions”.

Commencement Information

I279 Sch. 5 para. 80 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Audit Commission Act 1998 (c. 18)

- 81 In section 33 of the Audit Commission Act 1998, in subsection (8) (bodies not subject to certain Commission studies)—
- (a) omit paragraph (a), and
- (b) omit paragraph (b).

Commencement Information

I280 Sch. 5 para. 81 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Data Protection Act 1998 (c. 29)

- 82 In section 69 of the Data Protection Act 1998 (meaning of “health professional”)—
- (a) in subsection (1), in paragraph (k) for “such a body” substitute “a health service body”,
- (b) in subsection (3), omit paragraph (a),
- (c) in that subsection, before paragraph (b) insert—
- “(aa) the Secretary of State in relation to the exercise of functions under section 2A or 2B of, or paragraph 7C, 8 or 12 of Schedule 1 to, the National Health Service Act 2006,

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (ab) a local authority in relation to the exercise of functions under section 2B or 111 of, or any of paragraphs 1 to 7B or 13 of Schedule 1 to, that Act,” and
- (d) in that subsection, omit paragraph (bb).

Commencement Information

I281 Sch. 5 para. 82 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with arts. 7-9)

Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (c. 37)

- 83 The Crime and Disorder Act 1998 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I282 Sch. 5 para. 83 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with arts. 7-9)

- 84 In section 5 (authorities responsible for crime and disorder strategies), in subsection (1)(e) for “Primary Care Trust” substitute “clinical commissioning group”.

Commencement Information

I283 Sch. 5 para. 84 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with arts. 7-9)

- 85 In section 38 (local provision of youth justice services), in subsection (2)(b)—
- (a) after “local probation board” insert “, clinical commissioning group or”, and
- (b) omit “, Strategic Health Authority,”, and
- (c) omit “or Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I284 Sch. 5 para. 85 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with arts. 7-9)

- 86 In section 39 (Youth Offending Teams), in subsection (3)(b)—
- (a) after “local probation board” insert “, clinical commissioning group or”,
- (b) omit “, Strategic Health Authority,”, and
- (c) omit “or Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I285 Sch. 5 para. 86 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with arts. 7-9)

- 87 In that section, in subsection (5)(d)—
- (a) after “nominated by” insert “a clinical commissioning group or”, and
- (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust or”.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I286 Sch. 5 para. 87 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 88 In section 41 (the Youth Justice Board), in subsection (10)—
- (a) after “provider of probation services,” insert “a clinical commissioning group,”,
 - (b) for “, a Strategic Health Authority,” substitute “and”, and
 - (c) omit “and a Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I287 Sch. 5 para. 88 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 89 In section 42 (supplementary provisions), in subsection (3)—
- (a) after “provider of probation services,” insert “a clinical commissioning group,”,
 - (b) for “, a Strategic Health Authority,” substitute “or”, and
 - (c) omit “or a Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I288 Sch. 5 para. 89 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 90 In section 115, in subsection (2) (disclosure of information to relevant authorities)
- (a) omit paragraph (ea),
 - (b) after paragraph (f) insert—
 - “(fa) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;
 - (fb) a clinical commissioning group;”, and
 - (c) omit paragraph (g).

Commencement Information

I289 Sch. 5 para. 90 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Health Act 1999 (c. 8)

- 91 The Health Act 1999 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I290 Sch. 5 para. 91 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 92 In section 61 (English and Scottish border provisions)—
- (a) in subsection (2)—
 - (i) after “Secretary of State” insert “, the National Health Service Commissioning Board”,

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (ii) after “any” insert “clinical commissioning group”,
- (iii) omit “Strategic Health Authority”, and
- (iv) omit “or Primary Care Trust”, and
- (b) in subsection (5)—
 - (i) after “any” insert “clinical commissioning group”, and
 - (ii) omit “Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I291 Sch. 5 para. 92 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 93 In Schedule 4 (amendments relating to Primary Care Trusts)—
- (a) omit paragraphs 1, 74, and 86, and the cross-heading preceding each paragraph, and
 - (b) omit paragraphs 3(c), 82 and 85(2).

Commencement Information

I292 Sch. 5 para. 93 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Greater London Authority Act 1999 (c. 29)

- 94 In section 309E of the Greater London Authority Act 1999, in subsection (5) (bodies to be included among relevant bodies for purposes of Mayor of London's health inequalities strategy)—
- (a) omit paragraph (f),
 - (b) omit paragraph (g), and
 - (c) before paragraph (h) insert—
 - “(ga) the Secretary of State in relation to the exercise of functions under section 2A or 2B of, or paragraph 7C, 8 or 12 of Schedule 1 to, the National Health Service Act 2006,
 - (gb) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
 - (gc) any clinical commissioning group (established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006) for an area wholly or partly in Greater London,”.

Commencement Information

I293 Sch. 5 para. 94 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Care Standards Act 2000 (c. 14)

- 95 In section 121 of the Care Standards Act 2000 (interpretation), in subsection (1) in the definition of “National Health Service body”—
- (a) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (b) omit “, a Primary Care Trust”.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I294 Sch. 5 para. 95 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Government Resources and Accounts Act 2000 (c. 20)

- 96 (1) Section 14 of the Government Resources and Accounts Act 2000 (summarised accounts) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) omit “paragraph 7 of Schedule 15 to the National Health Service Act 2006 or”.
- (3) Omit subsection (3).
- (4) In subsection (4) for “that subsection” substitute “subsection (1)”.

Commencement Information

I295 Sch. 5 para. 96 in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [art. 11\(2\)](#))

Local Government Act 2000 (c. 22)

- 97 In section 21C of the Local Government Act 2000 (reports and recommendations of overview and scrutiny committees: duties of certain bodies), in subsection (6)—
- (a) before paragraph (b) insert—
- “(aa) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
- (ab) a clinical commissioning group, or”, and
- (b) omit paragraph (c) and the preceding “or”.

Commencement Information

I296 Sch. 5 para. 97 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000 (c. 23)

F⁶⁹⁸

Textual Amendments

F6 Sch. 5 para. 98 repealed (30.8.2018) by [Investigatory Powers Act 2016 \(c. 25\)](#), s. 272(1), **Sch. 10 Pt. 8** (with [Sch. 9 paras. 7, 8, 10](#)); [S.I. 2018/940](#), reg. 2(1)(h)(ii) (with [reg. 2\(2\)](#))

>Freedom of Information Act 2000 (c. 36)

- 99 In Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (NHS in England and Wales)—
- (a) omit paragraph 36A,
- (b) before paragraph 38 insert—

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- “37A The National Health Service Commissioning Board.
- 37B A clinical commissioning group established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006.”, and
- (c) omit paragraph 39.

Commencement Information

I297 Sch. 5 para. 99(a)(c) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

I298 Sch. 5 para. 99(b) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

International Development Act 2002 (c. 1)

- 100 In Schedule 1 to the International Development Act 2002 (statutory bodies with powers under section 9 of that Act)—
- (a) before the entry for a Health Board insert— “ the National Health Service Commissioning Board a clinical commissioning group ”,
- (b) omit the entry for a Primary Care Trust, and
- (c) omit the entry for a Strategic Health Authority.

Commencement Information

I299 Sch. 5 para. 100(a) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I300 Sch. 5 para. 100(b)(c) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17)

- 101 The National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I301 Sch. 5 para. 101 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 102 Omit Schedule 1 (English health authorities: change of name to Strategic Health Authorities).

Commencement Information

I302 Sch. 5 para. 102 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 103 Omit Schedule 2 (consequential amendments concerning the reallocation of functions to Primary Care Trusts).

Commencement Information

I303 Sch. 5 para. 103 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Adoption and Children Act 2002 (c. 38)

104 The Adoption and Children Act 2002 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I304 Sch. 5 para. 104 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 105 In section 4 (assessments etc for adoption support services), in subsection (9)—
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(za) there may be a need for the provision to that person of services that may be provided pursuant to arrangements made by a clinical commissioning group under the National Health Service Act 2006 (including by virtue of section 7A of that Act),”
 - (b) in paragraph (a) omit “a Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (c) in the text following paragraph (b)—
 - (i) after “notify that” insert “clinical commissioning group,”, and
 - (ii) omit “Primary Care Trust,”.

Commencement Information

I305 Sch. 5 para. 105 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 106 In section 8 (bodies which cannot be adoption support agencies), in subsection (2)—
- (a) before paragraph (d) insert—
 - “(ca) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,”, and”
 - (b) in paragraph (d)—
 - (i) omit “, Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (ii) before “(in Wales,” insert “, clinical commissioning group”.

Commencement Information

I306 Sch. 5 para. 106 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (c. 41)

- 107 In section 133(4) of the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (power of medical inspector to disclose information to health service bodies), in paragraph (a)—
- (a) omit sub-paragraph (i),
 - (b) before sub-paragraph (ii) insert—
 - “(ia) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
 - (ib) a clinical commissioning group established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006,

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (ic) a local authority in relation to the exercise of functions under section 2B or 111 of, or any of paragraphs 1 to 7B or 13 of Schedule 1 to, the National Health Service Act 2006,” and
- (c) omit sub-paragraph (iii).

Commencement Information

I307 Sch. 5 para. 107 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Community Care (Delayed Discharges etc.) Act 2003 (c. 5)

108 The Community Care (Delayed Discharges etc.) Act 2003 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I308 Sch. 5 para. 108 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

109 In section 1 (meaning of “NHS body” and “qualifying hospital patient”) in subsection (1), in the definition of “NHS body” in paragraph (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust (in England) or”.

Commencement Information

I309 Sch. 5 para. 109 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

110 In section 9 (dispute resolution)—

(a) in subsection (1) omit “by Strategic Health Authorities in England and”,

(b) at the end of that subsection insert “in relation to Wales”,

(c) in subsection (2) omit —

(i) “Strategic Health Authority or”, and

(ii) “Authority or”,

(d) in subsection (3)—

(i) for “the appropriate Minister considers” substitute “the Welsh Ministers consider”,

(ii) omit “a Strategic Health Authority or”, and

(iii) omit “Authority or”, and

(e) in subsection (4)(a) omit “Strategic Health Authority or”.

Commencement Information

I310 Sch. 5 para. 110 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Licensing Act 2003 (c. 17)

111 The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as follows.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I311 Sch. 5 para. 111 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 112 In section 5(3) (statement of licensing policy)—
- (a) in paragraph (ba) omit “Primary Care Trust or”, and
 - (b) after that paragraph insert—
 - “(bb) each local authority in England whose public health functions within the meaning of the National Health Service Act 2006 are exercisable in respect of an area any part of which is in the licensing authority's area,”.

Commencement Information

I312 Sch. 5 para. 112 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 113 In section 13(4) (authorised persons, interested parties and responsible authorities) —
- (a) in paragraph (ba) omit “Primary Care Trust or”, and
 - (b) after that paragraph insert—
 - “(bb) the local authority in England whose public health functions within the meaning of the National Health Service Act 2006 are exercisable in respect of any area in which the premises are situated,”.

Commencement Information

I313 Sch. 5 para. 113 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 114 In section 16 (applicant for premises licence), in subsection (3), in the definition of “health service body” omit paragraph (b).

Commencement Information

I314 Sch. 5 para. 114 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 115 In section 69(4) (authorised persons, interested parties and responsible authorities) —
- (a) in paragraph (ba) omit “Primary Care Trust or”, and
 - (b) after that paragraph insert—
 - “(bb) the local authority in England whose public health functions within the meaning of the National Health Service Act 2006 are exercisable in respect of any area in which the premises are situated,”.

Commencement Information

I315 Sch. 5 para. 115 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- 116 In section 172B(4) (procedural requirements for early morning alcohol restriction order)—
- (a) in paragraph (d) omit “Primary Care Trust or”, and
 - (b) after that paragraph insert—
 - “(da) the local authority in England whose public health functions within the meaning of the National Health Service Act 2006 are exercisable in respect of an area any part of which is in the area specified in the order,”.

Commencement Information

I316 Sch. 5 para. 116 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Sexual Offences Act 2003 (c. 42)

- 117 In section 42 of the Sexual Offences Act 2003 (care workers: interpretation) in subsection (5), in the definition of “National Health Service body”—
- (a) after paragraph (b) insert—
 - “(ba) the Secretary of State in relation to the exercise of functions under section 2A or 2B of, or paragraph 7C, 8 or 12 of Schedule 1 to, the National Health Service Act 2006,
 - (bb) a local authority in relation to the exercise of functions under section 2B or 111 of, or any of paragraphs 1 to 7B, or 13 of Schedule 1 to, the National Health Service Act 2006,” and
 - (b) omit paragraph (c).

Commencement Information

I317 Sch. 5 para. 117 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Health and Social Care (Community Health and Standards) Act 2003 (c. 43)

- 118 The Health and Social Care (Community Health and Standards) Act 2003 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I318 Sch. 5 para. 118 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 119 In section 71 (reporting to Secretary of State and regulator)—
- (a) in subsection (2), after “special measures” insert “or request another person to take special measures”, and
 - (b) omit subsections (3) and (4).

Commencement Information

I319 Sch. 5 para. 119 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

120 In section 113 (complaints about health care), in subsection (1), after paragraph (c) insert—

- “(d) anything done by the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group in pursuance of arrangements made under section 7A of the National Health Service Act 2006.”

Commencement Information

I320 Sch. 5 para. 120 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

121 In section 148 (interpretation of Part 2), in the definition of “English NHS body”—

- (a) omit paragraph (a),
(b) omit paragraph (b), and
(c) before paragraph (d) insert—
“(ca) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;
(cb) a clinical commissioning group;”.

Commencement Information

I321 Sch. 5 para. 121 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

122 In section 160 (provision of information)—

- (a) in subsection (1), after paragraph (g) insert—
“(h) if the injured person received NHS treatment pursuant to arrangements made by a clinical commissioning group under section 3 or 3A of the National Health Service Act 2006, the clinical commissioning group.”, and
(b) in subsection (4), in the definition of “responsible body” omit paragraph (a) (ii) and the word “or preceding it.”.

Commencement Information

I322 Sch. 5 para. 122 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

123 In section 165 (power to apply provisions about recovery of charges to non-NHS hospitals), in subsection (3)(b)—

- (a) omit sub-paragraph (i), and
(b) before sub-paragraph (ii) insert—
“(ia) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
(ib) a clinical commissioning group.”.

Commencement Information

I323 Sch. 5 para. 123 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44)

- 124 In section 325 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (arrangements for assessing etc risks posed by certain offenders)—
- (a) after subsection (6)(b) insert—
 - “(ba) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,”
 - (b) after subsection (6)(d) insert—
 - “(da) every local authority (in its capacity as a person exercising functions for the purposes of the health service) any part of whose area falls within the relevant area,”
 - (c) in subsection (6)(f) omit “or Strategic Health Authority”, and
 - (d) in subsection (6)(g)—
 - (i) after “every” insert “clinical commissioning group or”, and
 - (ii) omit “Primary Care Trust or”.

Commencement Information

I324 Sch. 5 para. 124 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Carers (Equal Opportunities) Act 2004 (c. 15)

- 125 (1) Section 3 of the Carers (Equal Opportunities) Act 2004 (co-operation between authorities) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2)(b) after “by” (in the second place it occurs) insert “or in pursuance of arrangements made by”.
 - (3) In subsection (3) after “provide” insert “or arrange for the provision of”.
 - (4) In subsection (5)—
 - (a) omit the “and” at the end of paragraph (c) and insert—
 - “(ca) the Secretary of State, in relation to the exercise of functions under section 2A or 2B of, or paragraph 7C, 8 or 12 of Schedule 1 to, the National Health Service Act 2006,
 - (cb) the National Health Service Commissioning Board, and”,
 - and
 - (b) in paragraph (d)—
 - (i) after “any” insert “clinical commissioning group,”, and
 - (ii) omit “Primary Care Trust,”.

Commencement Information

I325 Sch. 5 para. 125 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004 (c. 28)

- 126 In section 9 of the Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004 (establishment and conduct of domestic homicide reviews), in the list in subsection (4)(a)—
- (a) after the entry for local probation boards insert—

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- “the National Health Service Commissioning Board;
clinical commissioning groups established under section 14D of
the National Health Service Act 2006;”,
- (b) omit the entry for Strategic Health Authorities, and
 - (c) omit the entry for Primary Care Trusts.

Commencement Information

I326 Sch. 5 para. 126 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Children Act 2004 (c. 31)

127 The Children Act 2004 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I327 Sch. 5 para. 127 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 128 In section 10 (co-operation to improve wellbeing), in subsection (4)—
- (a) after paragraph (d) insert—
 - “(da) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;”,
 - (b) after paragraph (da) (as inserted by paragraph (a) above) insert—
 - “(db) any clinical commissioning group for an area any part of which falls within the area of the authority;”, and
 - (c) omit paragraph (e).

Commencement Information

I328 Sch. 5 para. 128 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 129 In section 11 (arrangements to safeguard and promote welfare), in subsection (1)—
- (a) after paragraph (b) insert—
 - “(ba) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;”,
 - (b) after paragraph (ba) (as inserted by paragraph (a) above) insert—
 - “(bb) a clinical commissioning group;”,
 - (c) omit paragraph (c), and
 - (d) omit paragraph (e).

Commencement Information

I329 Sch. 5 para. 129 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 130 In section 12A (establishment of children's trust boards), after subsection (7) at the end insert “otherwise than by virtue of section 10(4)(da) or (db)”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I330 Sch. 5 para. 130 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 131 In section 13 (establishment of Local Safeguarding Children Boards), in subsection (3)—
- (a) after paragraph (d) insert—
 - “(da) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;”,
 - (b) after paragraph (da) (as inserted by paragraph (a) above) insert—
 - “(db) any clinical commissioning group for an area any part of which falls within the area of the authority;”, and
 - (c) omit paragraph (e).

Commencement Information

I331 Sch. 5 para. 131 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Civil Contingencies Act 2004 (c. 36)

- 132 (1) Schedule 1 to the Civil Contingencies Act 2004 (lists of Category 1 and 2 responders) is amended as follows.
- (2) In Part 1 (which contains the general list of Category 1 responders)—
 - (a) after the cross-heading “Health” insert—
 - “4A The National Health Service Commissioning Board.”, and
 - (b) omit paragraph 7.
 - (3) In Part 3 (which contains the general list of Category 2 responders)—
 - (a) after the cross-heading “Health” insert—
 - “29ZA A clinical commissioning group established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006.”, and
 - (b) omit paragraph 29A.

Commencement Information

I332 Sch. 5 para. 132 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Mental Capacity Act 2005 (c. 9)

- 133 The Mental Capacity Act 2005 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I333 Sch. 5 para. 133 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 134 In section 35 (appointment of independent mental capacity advocates)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “appropriate authority” substitute “responsible authority”,

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) in subsection (4), for “appropriate authority” substitute “responsible authority”, and
- (c) after subsection (6) insert—

“(6A) In subsections (1) and (4), “the responsible authority” means—

- (a) in relation to the provision of the services of independent mental capacity advocates in the area of a local authority in England, that local authority, and
- (b) in relation to the provision of the services of independent mental capacity advocates in Wales, the Welsh Ministers.

(6B) In subsection (6A)(a), “local authority” has the meaning given in section 64(1) except that it does not include the council of a county or county borough in Wales.”

Commencement Information

I334 Sch. 5 para. 134 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 135 In section 64 (interpretation), in subsection (1) in the definition of “local authority”, after “except in” insert “section 35(6A)(a) and”.

Commencement Information

I335 Sch. 5 para. 135 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 136 (1) Schedule A1 (hospital and care home residents: deprivation of liberty) is amended as follows.

(2) In paragraph 176 (meaning of “managing authority”), in sub-paragraph (1)—

- (a) in paragraph (a) omit “Primary Care Trust,”,
- (b) in that paragraph omit “Strategic Health Authority,”,
- (c) after that paragraph insert—

“(aa) in relation to England, if the hospital falls within paragraph (a)(i) or (ii) and no Special Health Authority has responsibility for its administration, the Secretary of State;”,
and

- (d) in paragraph (b) omit “Primary Care Trust,”.

(3) In paragraph 180 (supervisory bodies: hospitals in England)—

- (a) for sub-paragraph (2) substitute—

“(2) If the relevant person is ordinarily resident in the area of a local authority in England, the supervisory body are that local authority.”,

- (b) in sub-paragraph (3), after “If” insert “the relevant person is not ordinarily resident in England and”,
- (c) in sub-paragraph (4), for “the Primary Care Trust” substitute “the local authority”,
- (d) after sub-paragraph (4) insert—

“(4A) Local authority” means—

- (a) the council of a county;

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) the council of a district for which there is no county council;
 - (c) the council of a London borough;
 - (d) the Common Council of the City of London;
 - (e) the Council of the Isles of Scilly.”, and
 - (e) in sub-paragraph (5), for “Primary Care Trusts” substitute “local authorities”.
- (4) In paragraph 181 (supervisory bodies: hospitals in Wales), for sub-paragraph (3) substitute—
- “(3) But if the relevant person is ordinarily resident in the area of a local authority in England, the supervisory body are that local authority.
- (4) “Local authority” means—
- (a) the council of a county;
 - (b) the council of a district for which there is no county council;
 - (c) the council of a London borough;
 - (d) the Common Council of the City of London;
 - (e) the Council of the Isles of Scilly.”
- (5) Before paragraph 183 insert the following heading— “ Supervisory bodies: determination of place of ordinary residence ”.
- (6) In that paragraph—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), for “paragraph” substitute “paragraphs 180, 181 and”, and
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (2), after “by virtue of sub-paragraph (1)” insert “to any determination of where a person is ordinarily resident for the purposes of paragraph 182”.

Commencement Information

I336 Sch. 5 para. 136 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21)

- 137 In section 4 of the Childcare Act 2006 (duty of local authority and relevant partners to work together), in subsection (1)—
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(za) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;”, and”
 - (b) in paragraph (a)—
 - (i) at the beginning insert “a clinical commissioning group”,
 - (ii) omit “a Strategic Health Authority”, and
 - (iii) omit “or Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I337 Sch. 5 para. 137 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Emergency Workers (Obstruction) Act 2006 (c. 39)

- 138 In section 1 of the Emergency Workers (Obstruction) Act 2006 (obstructing emergency workers)—
- (a) in subsection (5), in paragraph (a)—
 - (i) after “Wales,” insert “the Secretary of State in the exercise of public health functions, a local authority in the exercise of public health functions, the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group,” and
 - (ii) omit “, Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (b) after that subsection insert—
 - “(6) In subsection (5)(a) above “public health functions”—
 - (a) in relation to the Secretary of State, has the same meaning as in section 1H(5)(a) of the National Health Service Act 2006;
 - (b) in relation to a local authority, has the same meaning as in section 1H(5)(b) of that Act.”

Commencement Information

I338 Sch. 5 para. 138 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (c. 43)

- 139 In Schedule 1 to the National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006—
- (a) omit paragraphs 2(b), 30 (and the cross-heading preceding it), 47(b), 54(b), 90(e), 112(a), 125(c), 141(a), 170(b), 179(b)(iv), 180(c), 211(d), 228(a), 233(c), 234(c), 271(c) and 294 (which make amendments relating to Primary Care Trusts), and
 - (b) omit paragraphs 90(g), 125(e), 131(c)(i), 179(b)(i), 180(a)(i), 211(a), 228(c), 233(a), 234(a) and 271(e) (which make amendments relating to Strategic Health Authorities).

Commencement Information

I339 Sch. 5 para. 139 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

NHS Redress Act 2006 (c. 44)

- 140 The NHS Redress Act 2006 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I340 Sch. 5 para. 140 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 141 In section 1, in subsection (3)—
- (a) after paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(aa) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (ab) a clinical commissioning group,”
- (b) omit paragraph (b),
- (c) omit paragraph (c), and
- (d) in paragraph (d) for “(b) or (c)” substitute “(aa) or (ab)”.

Commencement Information

I341 Sch. 5 para. 141 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 142 In section 18 (interpretation), in subsection (1) omit the definition of “designated Strategic Health Authority”.

Commencement Information

I342 Sch. 5 para. 142 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 (c. 47)

- 143 The Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I343 Sch. 5 para. 143 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 144 In section 6 (regulated activity providers)—
- (a) omit subsection (8D), and
 - (b) before subsection (9) insert—

“(8E) The National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group does not make arrangements for another to engage in a regulated activity by virtue of anything the Board or the clinical commissioning group does under section 12A or 12D, or regulations under section 12A or 12B, of the National Health Service Act 2006 (direct payments for health services).”

Commencement Information

I344 Sch. 5 para. 144 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 145 In section 17 (NHS employment) in subsection (3)—
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(za) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;
 - (zb) a clinical commissioning group;”
 - (b) omit paragraph (b), and
 - (c) omit paragraph (f).

Commencement Information

I345 Sch. 5 para. 145 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- 146 In section 22 (controlled activity relating to vulnerable adults), in subsection (6) in the definition of “hospital services” omit paragraph (d).

Commencement Information

I346 Sch. 5 para. 146 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

PROSPECTIVE

Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act 2007 (c. 19)

- 147 In section 6 of the Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act 2007 (emergencies), in subsection (7) in the definition of “relevant NHS body”—
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(za) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;”,
 - and”
 - (b) in paragraph (a)—
 - (i) at the beginning insert “a clinical commissioning group;”,
 - (ii) omit “a Strategic Health Authority;”, and
 - (iii) omit “Primary Care Trust;”.

Commencement Information

I347 Sch. 5 para. 147(a)(b)(i) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#)

I348 Sch. 5 para. 147(b)(ii)(iii) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007 (c. 28)

- 148 The Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I349 Sch. 5 para. 148 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 149 (1) Section 222 (arrangements relating to local care services) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3)—
 - (a) after paragraph (c) insert “or
 - (ca) a clinical commissioning group.”,
 - (b) omit paragraph (d), and
 - (c) omit paragraph (e) and the preceding “or”.
 - (3) After that subsection insert—
 - “(3A) The arrangements must not be made with the National Health Service Commissioning Board.”

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I350 Sch. 5 para. 149 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

150 In section 224 (duties of services-providers to respond to local involvement networks)—

- (a) for “services-provider”, in each place it appears, substitute “responsible person”,
- (b) in subsection (2), before paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(za) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;
 - (zb) a clinical commissioning group;”,
- (c) in that subsection, omit paragraph (c), and
- (d) in the title, for “services-providers” substitute “responsible persons”.

Commencement Information

I351 Sch. 5 para. 150 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

151 In section 225 (duties of services-providers to allow entry by local involvement networks), in subsection (7), omit paragraph (c).

Commencement Information

I352 Sch. 5 para. 151 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

152 In section 227 (annual reports), in subsection (4)(b)—

- (a) omit “each Primary Care Trust,”,
- (b) omit “and”,
- (c) omit “each Strategic Health Authority,”, and
- (d) omit the words from “any” to the end.

Commencement Information

I353 Sch. 5 para. 152 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (c. 4)

153 In section 119 of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (offence of causing nuisance or disturbance on NHS premises), in subsection (4) in the definition of “relevant English NHS body”, omit paragraph (b).

Commencement Information

I354 Sch. 5 para. 153 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Health and Social Care Act 2008 (c. 14)

154 The Health and Social Care Act 2008 is amended as follows.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I355 Sch. 5 para. 154 in force at 1.4.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 155 In section 30 (urgent procedure for cancellation), in subsection (3)—
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(za) in any case where regulations so provide, to the National Health Service Commissioning Board,”
 - (b) in paragraph (a)—
 - (i) at the beginning insert “in any case where regulations so provide,”
 - (ii) after “such” insert “clinical commissioning group”, and
 - (iii) omit “Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (c) omit paragraph (b).

Commencement Information

I356 Sch. 5 para. 155 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 156 In section 39 (bodies required to be notified of certain matters), in subsection (1)—
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(za) in any case where regulations so provide, to the National Health Service Commissioning Board,”
 - (b) in paragraph (a)—
 - (i) at the beginning insert “in any case where regulations so provide,”
 - (ii) after “such” insert “clinical commissioning group”, and
 - (iii) omit “Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (c) omit paragraph (b).

Commencement Information

I357 Sch. 5 para. 156 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

^{F7}157

Textual Amendments

F7 Sch. 5 para. 157 omitted (1.10.2014) by virtue of [Care Act 2014 \(c. 23\)](#), [ss. 91\(9\)\(f\)](#), 127(1); [S.I. 2014/1714](#), [art. 4](#)

- 158 In section 48 (special reviews and investigations)—
- (a) in subsection (2) after paragraph (b) (and before the “or” immediately following it) insert—
 - “(ba) the exercise of the functions of the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group in arranging for the provision of NHS care under the National Health Service Act 2006,” and
 - (b) in subsection (8) omit paragraph (a) and the word “or” immediately following it.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information
I358 Sch. 5 para. 158 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

^{F8}159

Textual Amendments
F8 Sch. 5 para. 159 omitted (1.10.2014) by virtue of [Care Act 2014 \(c. 23\)](#), [ss. 91\(9\)\(f\)](#), 127(1); [S.I. 2014/1714](#), [art. 4](#)

160 In section 54 (studies as to economy, efficiency etc)—
 (a) omit subsection (2)(b), and
 (b) in subsection (5) after “reference to” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group or”.

Commencement Information
I359 Sch. 5 para. 160 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

161 In section 59 (additional functions) at the end insert—
 “(3) The references in subsection (1) to English NHS bodies do not include references to the National Health Service Commissioning Board or clinical commissioning groups.”

Commencement Information
I360 Sch. 5 para. 161 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

162 In section 64 (power to require documents and information), in subsection (2)(b)—
 (a) after “commissioned by” insert “—
 (i) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
 (ii) a clinical commissioning group, or
 (iii)”,
 and
 (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information
I361 Sch. 5 para. 162 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Textual Amendments

- F9** Sch. 5 para. 163 omitted (1.10.2014) by virtue of [Care Act 2014 \(c. 23\)](#), [ss. 91\(9\)\(f\)](#), 127(1); [S.I. 2014/1714](#), [art. 4](#)

PROSPECTIVE

F10 164

Textual Amendments

- F10** Sch. 5 para. 164 omitted (1.10.2014) by virtue of [Care Act 2014 \(c. 23\)](#), [ss. 91\(9\)\(f\)](#), 127(1); [S.I. 2014/1714](#), [art. 4](#)

- 165 In section 81 (publication of programme of reviews etc), in subsection (2) after paragraph (a) and before the “and” immediately following it insert—
“(aa) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,”.

Commencement Information

- I362** Sch. 5 para. 165 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 166 (1) Section 97 (general interpretation of Part 1) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) in the definition of “English NHS body”—
- (a) omit paragraph (a),
 - (b) omit paragraph (b), and
 - (c) before paragraph (d) insert—
“(ca) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
(cb) a clinical commissioning group,”.
- (3) In that subsection in the definition of “English NHS provider” omit paragraph (a).
- (4) In that subsection in the definition of “NHS care”—
- (a) after “health care” insert “—
(a) commissioned by the National Health Service Commissioning Board or by a clinical commissioning group (whether from an English NHS provider or not), or
(b)”, and
 - (b) omit from “provided by” to the end.
- (5) After subsection (2) insert—
- “(2A) Any reference in this Part to health care commissioned by the National Health Service Commissioning Board or by a clinical commissioning group is a reference to health care provided by other persons pursuant to arrangements made by the Board or a clinical commissioning group under

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

the National Health Service Act 2006 (including arrangements so made by virtue of section 7A of that Act).”

(6) Omit subsection (3).

Commencement Information

I363 Sch. 5 para. 166 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 167 In section 153 (directions to certain NHS bodies) in subsection (1)—
- (a) omit paragraph (a), and
 - (b) omit paragraph (b).

Commencement Information

I364 Sch. 5 para. 167 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Education and Skills Act 2008 (c. 25)

- 168 The Education and Skills Act 2008 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I365 Sch. 5 para. 168 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 169 In section 16 (supply of information by public bodies), in subsection (2)—
- (a) omit paragraph (c),
 - (b) omit paragraph (d), and
 - (c) before paragraph (e) insert—
 - “(da) a clinical commissioning group.”

Commencement Information

I366 Sch. 5 para. 169 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 170 In section 77 (supply of information by public bodies), in subsection (2)—
- (a) omit paragraph (c),
 - (b) omit paragraph (d), and
 - (c) before paragraph (e) insert—
 - “(da) a clinical commissioning group.”

Commencement Information

I367 Sch. 5 para. 170 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Autism Act 2009 (c. 15)

- 171 In section 4 of the Autism Act 2009 (interpretation), in subsection (1), in the definition of “NHS body”—

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) omit paragraph (a),
- (b) omit paragraph (b), and
- (c) before paragraph (d) insert—
 - “(ca) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;
 - (cb) a clinical commissioning group;”.

Commencement Information

I368 Sch. 5 para. 171 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Local Democracy, Economic Development and Construction Act 2009 (c. 20)

^{F11}172

Textual Amendments

F11 Sch. 5 para. 172 omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), [ss. 102\(2\)\(c\), 115\(3\)\(k\)](#)

Health Act 2009 (c. 21)

173 The Health Act 2009 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I369 Sch. 5 para. 173 in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#)

I370 Sch. 5 para. 173 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

174 In each of the following provisions for “NHS services” substitute “health services”—

- (a) the title to Part 1,
- (b) section 2(3), (4)(a) and (b), (5)(a) and (b) and (7), and
- (c) the definitions of “carers”, “patients” and “staff” in section 3(7).

Commencement Information

I371 Sch. 5 para. 174 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

175 (1) Section 2 (duty to have regard to NHS constitution) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for “NHS functions” substitute “health service functions”.

(3) In subsection (2)—

- (a) omit paragraph (a),
- (b) omit paragraph (b), and
- (c) before paragraph (d) insert—
 - “(ca) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;
 - (cb) clinical commissioning groups;

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (cc) local authorities (within the meaning of section 2B of the National Health Service Act 2006);”.
- (4) In subsection (3), for “an “NHS function”” substitute “a “health service function””.
- (5) In subsection (4)—
 - (a) before paragraph (a) insert—
 - “(za) provides health services under arrangements made by the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group under or by virtue of section 3, 3A, 3B or 4 of, or Schedule 1 to, the National Health Service Act 2006,”
 - (b) omit the word “or” at the end of paragraph (a), and
 - (c) after paragraph (b) insert “, or
 - (c) provides health services under arrangements made by a local authority for the purposes of its functions under or by virtue of section 2B or 6C(1) of, or Schedule 1 to, that Act.”
- (6) In subsection (5) for “subsection (4)(a) or (b)” substitute “subsection (4)(za), (a), (b) or (c)”.

Commencement Information

- I372** Sch. 5 para. 175(1) in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**
- I373** Sch. 5 para. 175(1)(3)(c) in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))
- I374** Sch. 5 para. 175(2)(3)(a)(b)(4)-(6) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))
- I375** Sch. 5 para. 175(3)(c) in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

- 176 (1) Section 3 (availability and review of NHS constitution) is amended as follows.
 - (2) In subsection (3), omit paragraph (d).
 - (3) Omit subsection (8).

Commencement Information

- I376** Sch. 5 para. 176 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 177 (1) Section 8 (duty of providers to publish information) is amended as follows.
 - (2) In subsection (1) for “NHS services” (in each place where it occurs) substitute “relevant health services”.
 - (3) Omit subsection (2)(a).
 - (4) In subsection (3) for paragraphs (a) to (c) substitute—
 - “(a) provides health services as mentioned in section 2(4)(za) or (a), or
 - (b) in pursuance of a contract, agreement or arrangements as mentioned in section 2(4)(za) or (a), makes arrangements for another person to provide health services,”.
 - (5) For subsection (6) substitute—

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

“(6) In this section—

“health services” has the same meaning as in Chapter 1;

“relevant health services” means health services the provision of which is arranged by the National Health Service Commissioning Board or a clinical commissioning group under or by virtue of section 3, 3A, 3B or 4 of, or Schedule 1 to, the National Health Service Act 2006 or under or by virtue of Parts 4 to 7 of that Act.”

Commencement Information

I377 Sch. 5 para. 177 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

178 In section 9 (supplementary provision about the duty to publish information), in subsection (3), for “a Strategic Health Authority” substitute “Monitor”.

Commencement Information

I378 Sch. 5 para. 178 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

179 In section 36 (disclosure of information by Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs), in subsection (3) after paragraph (a) insert—
“(aa) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;”.

Commencement Information

I379 Sch. 5 para. 179 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Equality Act 2010 (c. 15)

180 The Equality Act 2010 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I380 Sch. 5 para. 180 in force at 1.10.2012 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I381 Sch. 5 para. 180 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

181 In section 1 (public sector duty regarding socio-economic inequalities), in subsection (3)—
(a) omit paragraph (h), and
(b) omit paragraph (i).

Commencement Information

I382 Sch. 5 para. 181 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

182 In Part 1 of Schedule 19 (bodies subject to public sector equality duty), in the group of entries that includes entries for bodies whose functions relate to the health service—

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (a) at the beginning insert—
- “The National Health Service Commissioning Board.
 A clinical commissioning group established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006.”,
- (b) in the entry for an NHS trust, for “that Act” substitute “the National Health Service Act 2006”,
- (c) omit the entry for a Primary Care Trust, and
- (d) omit the entry for a Strategic Health Authority.

Commencement Information

I383 Sch. 5 para. 182(a) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

I384 Sch. 5 para. 182(b)-(d) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Child Poverty Act 2010 (c. 9)

- 183 In section 20 of the Child Poverty Act 2010 (partner authorities), in subsection (2)—
- (a) after paragraph (e) insert—
- “(ea) a clinical commissioning group;”,
- (b) omit paragraph (f), and
- (c) omit paragraph (g).

Commencement Information

I385 Sch. 5 para. 183 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Charities Act 2011 (c. 25)

- 184 In section 149 of the Charities Act 2011 (audit or examination of English NHS charity accounts), in subsection (7)—
- (a) omit paragraph (a),
- (b) omit paragraph (b),
- (c) before paragraph (c) insert—
- “(ba) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
 (bb) a clinical commissioning group,
 (bc) trustees for the National Health Service Commissioning Board appointed in pursuance of paragraph 11 of Schedule A1 to the National Health Service Act 2006, or
 (bd) trustees for a clinical commissioning group appointed in pursuance of paragraph 15 of Schedule 1A to that Act,”
 and
- (d) omit paragraph (f).

Commencement Information

I386 Sch. 5 para. 184(a)(b)(d) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-10](#), [Sch. paras. 1, 6](#))

I387 Sch. 5 para. 184(c) in force at 1.10.2012 by [S.I. 2012/1831](#), **art. 2(2)**

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

F12 SCHEDULE 6

Section 55(3)

Textual Amendments

F12 Sch. 6 omitted (1.7.2022) by virtue of Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 4 para. 189; S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

SCHEDULE 7

Section 56(4)

ABOLITION OF THE HEALTH PROTECTION AGENCY: CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (c. 13)

- 1 In Schedule 2 to the Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (departments etc. subject to investigation)—
- (a) omit the entry for the Health Protection Agency, and
 - (b) in the Notes, omit the paragraph on the Health Protection Agency.

Commencement Information

I388 Sch. 7 para. 1 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Superannuation Act 1972 (c. 11)

- 2 In Schedule 1 to the Superannuation Act 1972 (kinds of employment to which a scheme under section 1 of that Act can apply), omit the entry for the Health Protection Agency.

Commencement Information

I389 Sch. 7 para. 2 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70)

- 3 In section 113 of the Local Government Act 1972 (placing of staff of local authorities at disposal of other local authorities), in subsection (1A) omit “the Health Protection Agency,” in each place it occurs.

Commencement Information

I390 Sch. 7 para. 3 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Health and Safety at Work etc. Act 1974 (c. 37)

- 4 The Health and Safety at Work etc. Act 1974 is amended as follows.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I391 Sch. 7 para. 4 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 5 In section 16 (approval of codes of practice), in subsection (2)(a) omit the words from “(and, in particular,” to the end.

Commencement Information

I392 Sch. 7 para. 5 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 6 In section 50 (exercise of certain powers to make regulations), in subsection (3)(a) omit the words from “, and, in the case of” to “the Health Protection Agency”.

Commencement Information

I393 Sch. 7 para. 6 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24)

- 7 In Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (offices disqualifying for membership of the House), omit the entry for the chairman and any non-executive member of the Health Protection Agency.

Commencement Information

I394 Sch. 7 para. 7 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 25)

- 8 In Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (offices disqualifying for membership of the Assembly), omit the entry for the chairman and any non-executive member of the Health Protection Agency.

Commencement Information

I395 Sch. 7 para. 8 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Employment Rights Act 1996 (c. 18)

- 9 In section 218 of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (change of employer), in subsection (10) omit paragraph (dd).

Commencement Information

I396 Sch. 7 para. 9 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Freedom of Information Act 2000 (c. 36)

- 10 In Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (public authorities), omit the entry for the Health Protection Agency.

Commencement Information

I397 Sch. 7 para. 10 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

International Development Act 2002 (c. 1)

- 11 In Schedule 1 to the International Development Act 2002 (statutory bodies who may exercise certain powers for the purpose of assisting countries outside the UK), omit the entry for the Health Protection Agency.

Commencement Information

I398 Sch. 7 para. 11 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (c. 41)

- 12 (1) Section 133(4) of the Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (power of medical inspector to disclose information to health service bodies) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph (a)—
- (a) before sub-paragraph (i) insert—
- “(ai) the Secretary of State,”, and
- (b) omit sub-paragraph (vi) and the “or” preceding it.
- (3) In paragraph (b)—
- (a) after sub-paragraph (i) insert “or”, and
- (b) omit sub-paragraph (iv) and the “or” preceding it.
- (4) In paragraph (c)—
- (a) before sub-paragraph (i) insert—
- “(ai) the Secretary of State,”,
- (b) after sub-paragraph (iia) insert “or”, and
- (c) omit sub-paragraph (iii).
- (5) In paragraph (d)—
- (a) after sub-paragraph (ii) insert—
- “(iia) the Regional Agency for Public Health and Social Well-being established under section 12 of the Health and Social Care (Reform) Act (Northern Ireland) 2009, or”, and
- (b) omit sub-paragraph (iv) and the “, or” preceding it.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I399 Sch. 7 para. 12 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Scottish Public Services Ombudsman Act 2002 (asp 11)

13 The Scottish Public Services Ombudsman Act 2002 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I400 Sch. 7 para. 13 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

14 In section 7 (matters which may be investigated: restrictions), omit subsection (6A).

Commencement Information

I401 Sch. 7 para. 14 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

15 In Part 2 of Schedule 2 (persons liable to investigation), omit paragraph 90.

Commencement Information

I402 Sch. 7 para. 15 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Civil Contingencies Act 2004 (c. 36)

16 In Schedule 1 to the Civil Contingencies Act 2004, in Part 1 (list of Category 1 responders) for paragraph 9 substitute—

- “9 The Secretary of State, in so far as the functions of the Secretary of State include responding to emergencies by virtue of—
- (a) the Secretary of State's functions under section 2A of the National Health Service Act 2006,
 - (b) the Secretary of State's functions under section 58 of the Health and Social Care Act 2012 in so far as it applies in relation to Wales or Scotland, or
 - (c) arrangements made by the Welsh Ministers or Scottish Ministers under which the Secretary of State exercises on their behalf functions in relation to protecting the public in Wales or Scotland from disease or other dangers to health.”

Commencement Information

I403 Sch. 7 para. 16 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

National Health Service Act 2006 (c. 41)

17 The National Health Service Act 2006 is amended as follows.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I404 Sch. 7 para. 17 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

18 In section 9 (NHS contracts), in subsection (4) omit paragraph (j).

Commencement Information

I405 Sch. 7 para. 18 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

19 In section 71 (schemes for meeting losses and liabilities of certain health bodies)—
(a) in subsection (2) omit paragraph (g), and
(b) in subsection (5) for “, (f) and (g)” substitute “and (f)”.

Commencement Information

I406 Sch. 7 para. 19 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 (c. 42)

20 The National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I407 Sch. 7 para. 20 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

21 In section 7 (NHS contracts), in subsection (4) omit paragraph (j).

Commencement Information

I408 Sch. 7 para. 21 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

22 In section 30 (schemes for meeting losses and liabilities of certain health bodies), in subsection (2)—
(a) after paragraph (b) insert “and”, and
(b) omit paragraph (e) and the preceding “and”.

Commencement Information

I409 Sch. 7 para. 22 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (c. 43)

23 In Schedule 1 to the National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (consequential amendments), omit paragraphs 257 to 259 (and the cross-heading preceding them).

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I410 Sch. 7 para. 23 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Health and Social Care Act 2008 (c. 14)

- 24 In section 159 (functions of Health Protection Agency in relation to biological substances), omit subsections (2) to (6).

Commencement Information

I411 Sch. 7 para. 24 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1991 (No. 194 (N.I. 1))

- 25 In article 8 of the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1991 (health and social services contracts), in paragraph (2)(g) omit paragraph (vi).

Commencement Information

I412 Sch. 7 para. 25 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

SCHEDULE 8

Section 61

MONITOR

Membership

- 1 (1) Monitor is to consist of—
- (a) a chair appointed by the Secretary of State,
 - (b) at least four other members so appointed, and
 - (c) the chief executive and other members appointed in accordance with paragraph 2.
- (2) The number of executive members must be less than the number of non-executive members.
- (3) In this Schedule—
- (a) references to non-executive members of Monitor are references to the members appointed in accordance with sub-paragraph (1)(a) and (b), and
 - (b) references to executive members of Monitor are references to the other members.

Commencement Information

I413 Sch. 8 para. 1 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

The chief executive and other executive members: appointment and status

- 2
- (1) The chief executive and the other executive members of Monitor are to be appointed by the non-executive members.
 - (2) A person may not be appointed as chief executive or as another executive member without the consent of the Secretary of State.
 - (3) The non-executive members may not appoint more than five executive members without the consent of the Secretary of State.
 - (4) The chief executive and the other executive members are to be employees of Monitor.

Commencement Information

I414 Sch. 8 para. 2 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Non-executive members: tenure

- 3
- (1) A person holds and vacates office as a non-executive member of Monitor in accordance with that person's terms of appointment.
 - (2) A person may at any time resign from office as a non-executive member by giving notice to the Secretary of State.
 - (3) The Secretary of State may at any time remove a person from office as a non-executive member on any of the following grounds—
 - (a) incapacity,
 - (b) misbehaviour, or
 - (c) failure to carry out his or her duties as a non-executive member.
 - (4) The Secretary of State may suspend a person from office as a non-executive member if it appears to the Secretary of State that there are or may be grounds to remove the person from office under sub-paragraph (3).
 - (5) A person may not be appointed as a non-executive member for a period of more than four years.
 - (6) A person who ceases to be a non-executive member is eligible for re-appointment.

Commencement Information

I415 Sch. 8 para. 3 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Suspension from office

- 4
- (1) This paragraph applies where a person is suspended under paragraph 3(4).
 - (2) The Secretary of State must give notice of the decision to the person; and the suspension takes effect on receipt by the person of the notice.
 - (3) The notice may be—
 - (a) delivered in person (in which case, the person is taken to receive it when it is delivered), or

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) sent by first class post to the person's last known address (in which case, the person is taken to receive it on the third day after the day on which it is posted).
- (4) The initial period of suspension must not exceed six months.
- (5) The Secretary of State may at any time review the suspension.
- (6) The Secretary of State—
 - (a) must review the suspension if requested in writing by the person to do so, but
 - (b) need not review the suspension less than three months after the beginning of the initial period of suspension.
- (7) Following a review during a period of suspension, the Secretary of State may—
 - (a) revoke the suspension, or
 - (b) suspend the person for another period of not more than six months from the expiry of the current period.
- (8) The Secretary of State must revoke the suspension if the Secretary of State—
 - (a) decides that there are no grounds to remove the person from office under paragraph 3(3), or
 - (b) decides that there are grounds to do so but does not remove the person from office under that provision.

Commencement Information

I416 Sch. 8 para. 4 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

- 5 (1) Where a person is suspended from office as the chair under paragraph 3(4), the Secretary of State may appoint a non-executive member as interim chair to exercise the chair's functions.
- (2) Appointment as interim chair is for a term not exceeding the shorter of—
 - (a) the period ending with either—
 - (i) the appointment of a new chair, or
 - (ii) the revocation or expiry of the existing chair's suspension, and
 - (b) the remainder of the interim chair's term as a non-executive member.
- (3) A person who ceases to be the interim chair is eligible for re-appointment.

Commencement Information

I417 Sch. 8 para. 5 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Payment of non-executive members

- 6 (1) Monitor must pay to its non-executive members such remuneration and allowances as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (2) Monitor must pay or make provision for the payment of such pensions, allowances or gratuities as it may, with the approval of the Secretary of State, determine to or in respect of any person who is or has been a non-executive member.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (3) If a person ceases to be a non-executive member and the Secretary of State decides that there are exceptional circumstances which mean that the person should be compensated, Monitor must pay compensation to the person of such amount as the Secretary of State may determine.

Commencement Information

I418 Sch. 8 para. 6 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Staff

- 7 (1) Monitor may appoint such persons to be employees of Monitor as it considers appropriate.
- (2) Employees of Monitor are to be paid such remuneration and allowances as Monitor may determine.
- (3) Employees of Monitor are to be appointed on such other terms and conditions as Monitor may determine.
- (4) Monitor may pay or make provision for the payment of such pensions, allowances or gratuities as it may determine to or in respect of any person who is or has been an employee of Monitor.
- (5) Before making a determination as to remuneration, pensions, allowances or gratuities for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) or (4), Monitor must obtain the approval of the Secretary of State to its policy on that matter.

Commencement Information

I419 Sch. 8 para. 7 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Superannuation

- 8 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies where a person who is an active or deferred member of a scheme under section 1 of the Superannuation Act 1972 is appointed as chair.
- (2) The Minister for the Civil Service may determine that the person's office as chair is to be treated for the purposes of the scheme as service in the employment by reference to which the person is a member (whether or not any benefits are payable by virtue of paragraph 6(2)).
- (3) Employment with Monitor is among the kinds of employment to which a scheme under section 1 of the Superannuation Act 1972 can apply; and, accordingly, in Schedule 1 to that Act (in which those kinds of employment are listed), at the end of the list of "Other Bodies" insert— " Monitor ".
- (4) Monitor must pay to the Minister for the Civil Service, at such times as the Minister may direct, such sums as the Minister may determine in respect of any increase attributable to sub-paragraph (2) or (3) in the sums payable out of money provided by Parliament under the Superannuation Act 1972.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

- I420** Sch. 8 para. 8 partly in force; Sch. 8 para. 8 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)
- I421** Sch. 8 para. 8 in force at 1.11.2012 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Committees

- 9 (1) Monitor may appoint such committees and sub-committees as it considers appropriate.
- (2) A committee or sub-committee may consist of or include persons who are not members or employees of Monitor.
- (3) Monitor may pay such remuneration and allowances as it determines to any person who—
- (a) is a member of a committee or sub-committee, but
 - (b) is not an employee of Monitor,
- whether or not that person is a non-executive member of Monitor.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1** Sch. 8 para. 9 continued (with modifications) (1.7.2022) by The Health and Care Act 2022 (Commencement No. 2 and Transitional and Saving Provision) Regulations 2022 (S.I. 2022/734), reg. 10 (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

- I422** Sch. 8 para. 9 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Procedure

- 10 (1) Monitor may regulate its own procedure.
- (2) The validity of any act of Monitor is not affected by any vacancy among the members or by any defect in the appointment of a member.

Commencement Information

- I423** Sch. 8 para. 10 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Exercise of functions

- 11 (1) Monitor must exercise its functions effectively, efficiently and economically.
- (2) Monitor may arrange for the exercise of its functions on its behalf by—
- (a) a non-executive member;
 - (b) an employee (including the chief executive);
 - (c) a committee or sub-committee.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

[^{F13}(2A) Sub-paragraph (2) is subject to provision in rules made under section 51 of the Competition Act 1998 by virtue of paragraph 1A of Schedule 9 to that Act in respect of the exercise of a function under Part 1 of that Act.]

Textual Amendments

F13 Sch. 8 para. 11(2A) inserted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 15 para. 49; S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(f) (with Sch.)

Commencement Information

I424 Sch. 8 para. 11 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Assistance

- 12 (1) Monitor may arrange for persons to assist it in the exercise of its functions in relation to—
- (a) a particular case, or
 - (b) cases of a particular description.
- (2) Such arrangements may include provision with respect to the payment of remuneration and allowances to, or amounts in respect of, such persons.

Commencement Information

I425 Sch. 8 para. 12 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Borrowing

- 13 (1) Monitor may, with the consent of the Secretary of State, borrow money temporarily by way of overdraft.
- (2) But subject to that, and subject to sections 145 and 146 (power to borrow for exercising functions in relation to financial assistance and power of Secretary of State to lend etc.), Monitor may not borrow money.

Commencement Information

I426 Sch. 8 para. 13 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2) (with art. 11)

Acquiring information

- 14 (1) Monitor may obtain, compile and keep under review information about matters relating to the exercise of its functions.
- (2) Where Monitor exercises the power under sub-paragraph (1), it must do so with a view to (among other things) ensuring that it has sufficient information to take informed decisions and to exercise its other functions effectively.
- (3) In exercising the power under sub-paragraph (1), Monitor may carry out, commission or support (financially or otherwise) research.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I427 Sch. 8 para. 14 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

General power

- 15 Monitor may do anything which appears to it to be necessary or expedient for the purposes of, or in connection with, the exercise of its functions.

Commencement Information

I428 Sch. 8 para. 15 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Finance

- 16 (1) The Secretary of State may make payments to Monitor out of money provided by Parliament of such amounts as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- (2) Payments made under sub-paragraph (1) may be made at such times and on such conditions (if any) as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.

Commencement Information

I429 Sch. 8 para. 16 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Accounts of NHS foundation trusts

- 17 (1) Monitor must prepare in respect of each financial year a set of accounts which consolidates the annual accounts of all NHS foundation trusts.
- (2) The Secretary of State may, with the approval of the Treasury, direct Monitor to prepare a set of accounts in respect of such period as may be specified in the direction which consolidates any accounts prepared by NHS foundation trusts by virtue of paragraph 25(1A) of Schedule 7 to the National Health Service Act 2006 in respect of that period.
- (3) In preparing any consolidated accounts under this paragraph, Monitor must comply with directions given by the Secretary of State with the approval of the Treasury as to—
- (a) the content and form of the consolidated accounts;
 - (b) the methods and principles according to which the consolidated accounts should be prepared.
- (4) Monitor must send a copy of any consolidated accounts under this paragraph to the Secretary of State and, if the Secretary of State so directs, the Comptroller and Auditor General—
- (a) accompanied by such other reports or information as the Secretary of State may direct, and
 - (b) within the relevant period.
- (5) In sub-paragraph (4)(b), the relevant period is—

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) in relation to consolidated accounts under sub-paragraph (1), such period after the end of the financial year concerned as the Secretary of State may direct;
 - (b) in relation to consolidated accounts under sub-paragraph (2), such period as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (6) Before giving a direction under sub-paragraph (5), the Secretary of State must consult Monitor.
- (7) The Comptroller and Auditor General must—
- (a) examine, certify and report on any consolidated accounts sent under this paragraph,
 - (b) if the Secretary of State so directs, send a copy of the report on the accounts to the Secretary of State, and
 - (c) if the Secretary of State so directs, lay copies of the accounts and the report on them before Parliament.
- (8) Monitor must act with a view to securing that NHS foundation trusts—
- (a) comply promptly with requests from it or the Secretary of State for information relating to their accounts, and
 - (b) otherwise act so as to facilitate the preparation of accounts by the Secretary of State.
- (9) This paragraph does not apply to the financial year specified for the purposes of section 155(7) (which provides for the order that commences section 155, which itself relates to the preparation of the accounts of NHS foundation trusts, to specify the first financial year to which that section will apply) or to the subsequent financial years.

Commencement Information

- I430** Sch. 8 para. 17 partly in force; Sch. 8 para. 17 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)
- I431** Sch. 8 para. 17 in force at 1.11.2012 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Accounts of Monitor

- 18 (1) Monitor must keep proper accounts and proper records in relation to the accounts.
- (2) The Secretary of State may, with the approval of the Treasury, give directions to Monitor as to—
- (a) the content and form of its accounts, and
 - (b) the methods and principles to be applied in the preparation of its accounts.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2), the reference to accounts includes Monitor's annual accounts prepared under paragraph 19 and any interim accounts prepared by virtue of paragraph 20.

Commencement Information

- I432** Sch. 8 para. 18 partly in force; Sch. 8 para. 18 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

I433 Sch. 8 para. 18 in force at 1.11.2012 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

- 19 (1) Monitor must prepare annual accounts in respect of each financial year.
- (2) Monitor must send copies of the annual accounts to the Secretary of State and the Comptroller and Auditor General within such period after the end of the financial year to which the accounts relate as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (3) The Comptroller and Auditor General must—
- (a) examine, certify and report on the annual accounts, and
 - (b) lay copies of them and the report before Parliament.

Commencement Information

I434 Sch. 8 para. 19 partly in force; Sch. 8 para. 19 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)

I435 Sch. 8 para. 19 in force at 1.11.2012 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

- 20 (1) The Secretary of State may, with the approval of the Treasury, direct Monitor to prepare accounts in respect of such period or periods as may be specified in the direction (“interim accounts”).
- (2) Monitor must send copies of any interim accounts to the Secretary of State and, if the Secretary of State so directs, the Comptroller and Auditor General within such period as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (3) The Comptroller and Auditor General must—
- (a) examine, certify and report on any interim accounts sent by virtue of subparagraph (2),
 - (b) if the Secretary of State so directs, send a copy of the report on the accounts to the Secretary of State, and
 - (c) if the Secretary of State so directs, lay copies of the accounts and the report on them before Parliament.

Commencement Information

I436 Sch. 8 para. 20 partly in force; Sch. 8 para. 20 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)

I437 Sch. 8 para. 20 in force at 1.11.2012 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

Reports and other information

- 21 (1) As soon as practicable after the end of each financial year, Monitor must prepare an annual report on how it has exercised its functions during the year.
- (2) The report must, in particular—
- (a) set out the measures that Monitor has taken to promote economy, efficiency and effectiveness in the use of resources for the exercise of its functions,
 - (b) include a statement of what it did to comply with the duty under section 63(2) (duty to have regard to Secretary of State's guidance on duty under section 62(9)), and

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (c) include a statement of what it did to comply with the duty under section 66(2)(h) (duty to have regard to Secretary of State's guidance on relevant parts of document on improving quality of services).
- (3) Monitor must—
- (a) lay a copy of the report before Parliament, and
 - (b) once it has done so, send a copy of it to the Secretary of State.
- (4) Monitor must provide the Secretary of State with—
- (a) such other reports and information relating to the exercise of Monitor's functions as the Secretary of State may require;
 - (b) such information about NHS foundation trusts that Monitor has in its possession as the Secretary of State may require.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C2 Sch. 8 para. 21(1)-(3) continued (with modifications) (1.7.2022) by [The Health and Care Act 2022 \(Commencement No. 2 and Transitional and Saving Provision\) Regulations 2022 \(S.I. 2022/734\)](#), [reg. 10](#) (with [regs. 13, 29, 30](#))

Commencement Information

I438 Sch. 8 para. 21 in force at 1.11.2012 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#)

Recommendations by Committees in Parliament

- 22 Monitor must respond in writing to any recommendation about its exercise of its functions that a Committee of either House of Parliament or a Committee of both Houses makes.

Commencement Information

I439 Sch. 8 para. 22 in force at 1.11.2012 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#)

Seal and evidence

- 23 (1) The application of Monitor's seal must be authenticated by the signature of the chair or any other person who has been authorised (generally or specifically) for that purpose.
- (2) A document purporting to be duly executed under Monitor's seal or to be signed on its behalf must be received in evidence and, unless the contrary is proved, taken to be so executed or signed.

Commencement Information

I440 Sch. 8 para. 23 in force at 1.11.2012 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#)

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Status

- 24 (1) Monitor must not be regarded as the servant or agent of the Crown or as enjoying any status, immunity or privilege of the Crown.
- (2) Monitor's property must not be regarded as property of, or property held on behalf of, the Crown.

Commencement Information

I441 Sch. 8 para. 24 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

F14 SCHEDULE 9

Section 77

Textual Amendments

F14 Sch. 9 omitted (1.1.2024) by virtue of Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), ss. 80(2), 186(6); S.I. 2023/1431, reg. 3(c) (with reg. 5)

F15 SCHEDULE 10

Sections 101 and 142

Textual Amendments

F15 Sch. 10 omitted (1.7.2022) by virtue of Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), ss. 85(9), 186(6); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

SCHEDULE 11

Section 107

FURTHER PROVISION ABOUT [F16 NHS ENGLAND'S] ENFORCEMENT POWERS

Textual Amendments

F16 Words in Sch. 11 heading substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(2); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

PART 1

DISCRETIONARY REQUIREMENTS

Procedure

- 1 (1) Where [F17NHS England] proposes to impose a discretionary requirement on a person, [F17NHS England] must give notice to that person (a “notice of intent”).
- (2) A notice of intent must—
- (a) state that [F18NHS England] proposes to impose the discretionary requirement and set out its effect,
 - (b) set out the grounds for the proposal to impose the requirement,
 - (c) explain the effect of section 106 (enforcement undertakings),
 - (d) set out the circumstances (if any) in which [F19NHS England] may not impose the requirement, and
 - (e) specify the period (“the notice period”) within which representations with respect to the proposal may be made to [F20NHS England].
- (3) The notice period must be not less than 28 days beginning with the day after that on which the notice of intent is received.
- (4) But where [F21NHS England]—
- (a) proposes to impose a compliance requirement or restoration requirement, and
 - (b) considers that a shorter notice period is necessary to prevent or minimise further breaches of the kind referred to in section 105(1),
- the notice period is to be such shorter period as [F21NHS England] may determine, but not less than 5 days beginning with the day after that on which the notice of intent is received.

Textual Amendments

- F17** Words in Sch. 11 para. 1(1) substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\), s. 186\(6\), Sch. 5 para. 100\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F18** Words in Sch. 11 para. 1(2)(a) substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\), s. 186\(6\), Sch. 5 para. 100\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F19** Words in Sch. 11 para. 1(2)(d) substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\), s. 186\(6\), Sch. 5 para. 100\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F20** Words in Sch. 11 para. 1(2)(e) substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\), s. 186\(6\), Sch. 5 para. 100\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F21** Words in Sch. 11 para. 1(4) substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\), s. 186\(6\), Sch. 5 para. 100\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

- I442** Sch. 11 para. 1 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/671, art. 2\(3\)](#)

- 2 (1) After the end of the notice period [F22NHS England] must decide whether to—
- (a) impose the discretionary requirement, with or without modifications, or
 - (b) impose any other discretionary requirement.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (2) Where [^{F23}NHS England] decides under sub-paragraph (1) to impose a discretionary requirement on a person [^{F23}NHS England] must give notice to that person (a “final notice”).
- (3) A final notice must—
- (a) state that [^{F24}NHS England] has decided to impose the discretionary requirement and set out its effect,
 - (b) set out the grounds for imposing the requirement,
 - (c) in the case of a variable monetary penalty, state—
 - (i) how payment may be made,
 - (ii) the period (“the payment period”) within which payment must be made,
 - (iii) any discount applicable for early payment of the penalty, and
 - (iv) the rate of interest payable for late payment of the penalty,
 - (d) set out the consequences of failing to comply with the requirement, and
 - (e) explain the right of appeal conferred by paragraph 3.
- (4) The payment period must be not less than 28 days beginning with the day after that on which the final notice is received.
- (5) [^{F25}NHS England] must not decide under sub-paragraph (1) to impose a variable monetary penalty unless the notice of intent was given before the end of the period of 5 years beginning with the day (or, in the case of a continuing breach, the last day) on which the breach giving rise to the imposition of the discretionary requirement occurred.

Textual Amendments

- F22** Words in Sch. 11 para. 2(1) substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\)](#), s. 186(6), [Sch. 5 para. 100\(3\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F23** Words in Sch. 11 para. 2(2) substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\)](#), s. 186(6), [Sch. 5 para. 100\(3\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F24** Words in Sch. 11 para. 2(3)(a) substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\)](#), s. 186(6), [Sch. 5 para. 100\(3\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F25** Words in Sch. 11 para. 2(5) substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\)](#), s. 186(6), [Sch. 5 para. 100\(3\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

- I443** Sch. 11 para. 2(1)(2)(3)(a)(b)(d)(e) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/671](#), [art. 2\(3\)](#)
- I444** Sch. 11 para. 2(3)(c)(4)(5) in force at 1.7.2013 by [S.I. 2013/671](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)

- 3 (1) A person may appeal to the First-tier Tribunal against a decision of [^{F26}NHS England] to impose a discretionary requirement.
- (2) The grounds for an appeal under this paragraph are—
- (a) that the decision was based on an error of fact,
 - (b) that the decision was wrong in law,
 - (c) in the case of a decision imposing a variable monetary penalty, that the amount of the penalty is unreasonable,

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (d) in the case of a decision to impose a compliance requirement or a restoration requirement, that the nature of the requirement is unreasonable, or
 - (e) that the decision was unreasonable for any other reason.
- (3) The discretionary requirement is suspended pending determination of the appeal.
- (4) On an appeal under this paragraph, the Tribunal may—
- (a) confirm, vary or withdraw the discretionary requirement,
 - (b) take such steps as [F27NHS England] could take in relation to the breach giving rise to the imposition of the requirement, or
 - (c) remit the decision whether to confirm the requirement, or any matter relating to that decision, to [F28NHS England].

Textual Amendments

F26 Words in Sch. 11 para. 3(1) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(c); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

F27 Words in Sch. 11 para. 3(4)(b) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(c); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

F28 Words in Sch. 11 para. 3(4)(c) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(c); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

I445 Sch. 11 para. 3(1)(2)(a)(b)(d)(e) in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(3)

I446 Sch. 11 para. 3(2)(c) in force at 1.7.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(4)

- 4 [F29NHS England] may by notice to a person on whom a discretionary requirement has been imposed—
- (a) withdraw the discretionary requirement,
 - (b) in the case of a variable monetary penalty, reduce the amount of the penalty or extend the payment period, or
 - (c) in the case of a compliance requirement or a restoration requirement, extend the period specified for taking the steps specified in the requirement.

Textual Amendments

F29 Words in Sch. 11 para. 4 substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(d); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

I447 Sch. 11 para. 4(a)(c) in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(3)

I448 Sch. 11 para. 4(b) in force at 1.7.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(4)

Non-compliance penalties

- 5 (1) If a person fails to comply with a compliance requirement or a restoration requirement [F30NHS England] may impose a monetary penalty on that person of such amount as [F30NHS England] may determine (a “non-compliance penalty”).

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (2) Where [^{F31}NHS England] proposes to impose a non-compliance penalty on a person [^{F31}NHS England] must give notice to that person (a “non-compliance notice”).
- (3) A non-compliance notice must—
- (a) specify the amount of the non-compliance penalty,
 - (b) set out the grounds for imposing the penalty,
 - (c) state how payment of the penalty may be made,
 - (d) state the period (“the payment period”) within which payment must be made,
 - (e) state any discount applicable for early payment of the penalty,
 - (f) set out the consequences of a failure to pay within the payment period (including any increase in the amount payable), and
 - (g) explain the right of appeal conferred by paragraph 6.
- (4) The payment period must be not less than 28 days beginning with the day after that on which the non-compliance notice is received.
- (5) If the whole or any part of a non-compliance penalty is not paid by the time it is required to be paid [^{F32}NHS England] may increase the amount payable by no more than 50% of the amount of the penalty.
- (6) [^{F33}NHS England] may by notice to a person on whom a non-compliance penalty has been imposed reduce the amount of the penalty or extend the payment period.

Textual Amendments

- F30** Words in Sch. 11 para. 5(1) substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\)](#), s. 186(6), [Sch. 5 para. 100\(3\)\(e\)](#); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F31** Words in Sch. 11 para. 5(2) substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\)](#), s. 186(6), [Sch. 5 para. 100\(3\)\(e\)](#); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F32** Words in Sch. 11 para. 5(5) substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\)](#), s. 186(6), [Sch. 5 para. 100\(3\)\(e\)](#); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F33** Words in Sch. 11 para. 5(6) substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\)](#), s. 186(6), [Sch. 5 para. 100\(3\)\(e\)](#); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

- I449** Sch. 11 para. 5 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/671](#), [art. 2\(3\)](#)

- 6 (1) A person may appeal to the First-tier Tribunal against a decision of [^{F34}NHS England] to impose a non-compliance penalty.
- (2) The grounds for such an appeal are—
- (a) that the decision was based on an error of fact,
 - (b) that the decision was wrong in law, or
 - (c) that the decision was, or the amount of the penalty is, unfair or unreasonable.
- (3) The non-compliance penalty is suspended pending determination of the appeal.
- (4) On an appeal, the Tribunal may—
- (a) confirm, vary or withdraw the non-compliance penalty, or
 - (b) remit the decision whether to confirm the penalty, or any matter relating to that decision, to [^{F35}NHS England].

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Textual Amendments

- F34** Words in Sch. 11 para. 6(1) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(f); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F35** Words in Sch. 11 para. 6(4)(b) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(f); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

- I450** Sch. 11 para. 6 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(3)

Recovery of financial penalties

- 7 (1) Amounts payable to [^{F36}NHS England] of the kind mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) are recoverable summarily as a civil debt (but this does not affect any other method of recovery).
- (2) The amounts are—
- (a) a variable monetary penalty and any interest payable on it, or
 - (b) a non-compliance penalty.

Textual Amendments

- F36** Words in Sch. 11 para. 7(1) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(g); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

- I451** Sch. 11 para. 7(1)(2)(b) in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(3)
- I452** Sch. 11 para. 7(2)(a) in force at 1.7.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(4)

Payments of penalties etc. into Consolidated Fund

- 8 [^{F37}NHS England] must pay any sums it receives in respect of any of the following into the Consolidated Fund—
- (a) a variable monetary penalty and any interest payable on it, or
 - (b) a non-compliance penalty.

Textual Amendments

- F37** Words in Sch. 11 para. 8 substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(h); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

- I453** Sch. 11 para. 8(a) in force at 1.7.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(4)
- I454** Sch. 11 para. 8(b) in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(3)

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

PART 2

ENFORCEMENT UNDERTAKINGS

Procedure

- 9 (1) [^{F38}NHS England] must publish a procedure for entering into enforcement undertakings.
- (2) [^{F39}NHS England] may revise the procedure and if it does so, [^{F39}NHS England] must publish the procedure as revised.
- (3) [^{F40}NHS England] must consult such persons as it considers appropriate before publishing or revising the procedure.

Textual Amendments

- F38** Words in Sch. 11 para. 9(1) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(i); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F39** Words in Sch. 11 para. 9(2) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(i); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F40** Words in Sch. 11 para. 9(3) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(i); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

- I455** Sch. 11 para. 9 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(3)

- 10 (1) Where [^{F41}NHS England] accepts an enforcement undertaking, [^{F41}NHS England] must publish the undertaking.
- (2) But [^{F42}NHS England] must not under sub-paragraph (1) publish any part of an enforcement undertaking which contains information which it is satisfied is—
- (a) commercial information the disclosure of which would, or might, significantly harm the legitimate business interests of the person to whom it relates;
 - (b) information relating to the private affairs of an individual the disclosure of which would, or might, significantly harm that person's interests.

Textual Amendments

- F41** Words in Sch. 11 para. 10(1) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(j); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F42** Words in Sch. 11 para. 10(2) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(j); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

- I456** Sch. 11 para. 10 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(3)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Variation of terms

- 11 The terms of an enforcement undertaking (including, in particular, the action specified under it and the period so specified within which the action must be taken) may be varied if both the person giving the undertaking and [F43NHS England] agree.

Textual Amendments

F43 Words in Sch. 11 para. 11 substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(k); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

I457 Sch. 11 para. 11 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(3)

Compliance certificates

- 12 (1) Where [F44NHS England] is satisfied that an enforcement undertaking has been complied with, [F44NHS England] must issue a certificate to that effect (referred to in this Schedule as a “compliance certificate”).
- (2) A person who has given an enforcement undertaking may at any time make an application to [F45NHS England] for a compliance certificate.
- (3) The application must be made in such form, and accompanied by such information, as [F46NHS England] requires.
- (4) [F47NHS England] must decide whether or not to issue a compliance certificate, and give notice to the applicant of its decision, before the end of the period of 14 days beginning with the day after that on which the application is received.

Textual Amendments

F44 Words in Sch. 11 para. 12(1) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(l); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

F45 Words in Sch. 11 para. 12(2) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(l); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

F46 Words in Sch. 11 para. 12(3) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(l); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

F47 Words in Sch. 11 para. 12(4) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(l); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

I458 Sch. 11 para. 12 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(3)

- 13 (1) An appeal lies to the First-tier Tribunal against a decision of [F48NHS England] to refuse an application for a certificate of compliance.
- (2) The grounds for an appeal under this paragraph are that the decision was—
- (a) based on an error of fact,
 - (b) wrong in law, or
 - (c) unfair or unreasonable.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (3) On an appeal under this paragraph, the Tribunal may confirm [^{F49}NHS England's] decision or direct that it is not to have effect.

Textual Amendments

- F48** Words in Sch. 11 para. 13(1) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(m); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F49** Words in Sch. 11 para. 13(3) substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(4); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

- I459** Sch. 11 para. 13 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(3)

Inaccurate, incomplete or misleading information

- 14 Where [^{F50}NHS England] is satisfied that a person who has given an enforcement undertaking has supplied [^{F50}NHS England] with inaccurate, misleading or incomplete information in relation to the undertaking—
- (a) [^{F50}NHS England] may treat the person as having failed to comply with the undertaking, and
- (b) if [^{F50}NHS England] decides so to treat the person, [^{F50}NHS England] must by notice revoke any compliance certificate given to that person.

Textual Amendments

- F50** Words in Sch. 11 para. 14 substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 5 para. 100(3)(n); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

- I460** Sch. 11 para. 14 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(3)

SCHEDULE 12

Section 120

PROCEDURE ON REFERENCES UNDER SECTION 120

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C3** Sch. 12 modified (temp.) (1.7.2022) by The Health and Care Act 2022 (Commencement No. 2 and Transitional and Saving Provision) Regulations 2022 (S.I. 2022/734), reg. 19(3)(4) (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Contents etc. of reference

- 1 (1) A reference under section 120 must specify—
- (a) Monitor's reasons for proposing the method to which the reference relates, and

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) its representations as to why the grounds referred to in section 121(4) do not apply.
- (2) Monitor must give notice of the reference to—
- (a) [^{F51}NHS England], and
 - (b) each objector.
- (3) The notice must be accompanied by a copy of the reference.
- (4) In this Schedule, “objector” means—
- (a) in relation to a reference made where the condition in section 120(2)(a) is not met, each clinical commissioning group who objected to the proposed method to which the reference relates, and
 - (b) in relation to a reference made where the condition in section 120(2)(b) or (c) is not met, each relevant provider who objected to that proposed method.

Textual Amendments

F51 Words in Sch. 12 substituted (1.7.2022) by Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 1 para. 1(1)(2); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

I461 Sch. 12 para. 1 in force at 1.9.2013 for specified purposes by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(5)

I462 Sch. 12 para. 1 in force at 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2014/39, art. 2(3)

Representations by objectors

- 2
- (1) If an objector wishes to make representations to the [^{F52}CMA] on the matters specified in the reference for the purposes of paragraph 1(1), the objector must do so before the end of the period of 10 working days beginning with the day on which the objector receives the notice under paragraph 1(2).
 - (2) The objector must give Monitor a copy of the representations.
 - (3) If Monitor wishes to reply to representations under sub-paragraph (1), it must do so before the end of the period of 10 working days beginning with the day on which it receives the copy under sub-paragraph (2).
 - (4) Monitor must send a copy of its reply to the objector who made the representations.
 - (5) In this Schedule, “working day” means any day other than—
 - (a) a Saturday or a Sunday,
 - (b) Christmas Day or Good Friday, or
 - (c) a bank holiday in England and Wales under the Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971.

Textual Amendments

F52 Word in Sch. 12 para. 2(1) substituted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(2); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

- I463** Sch. 12 para. 2 in force at 1.9.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/671](#), [art. 2\(5\)](#)
I464 Sch. 12 para. 2 in force at 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2014/39](#), [art. 2\(3\)](#)

Functions of [^{F53}CMA] in relation to reference

Textual Amendments

- F53** Word in [Sch. 12 para. 3 cross-heading](#) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2014/416](#), art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)

- 3 ^{F54}(1)
- (2) A group [^{F55}constituted by the chair of the CMA under Schedule 4 to the Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 for the purpose of carrying out functions of the CMA with respect to a reference under section 120] must consist of three members of the [^{F56}CMA panel].
- ^{F57}(3)
- ^{F57}(4)
- ^{F57}(5)
- ^{F57}(6)
- (7) A decision of [^{F58}the group] is effective only if—
- (a) all the members of the group are present when it is made, and
- (b) at least two members of the group are in favour of it.

Textual Amendments

- F54** [Sch. 12 para. 3\(1\)](#) omitted (1.4.2014) by virtue of [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(4\)\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2014/416](#), art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F55** Words in [Sch. 12 para. 3\(2\)](#) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(4\)\(b\)\(i\)](#); [S.I. 2014/416](#), art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F56** Words in [Sch. 12 para. 3\(2\)](#) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(4\)\(b\)\(ii\)](#); [S.I. 2014/416](#), art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F57** [Sch. 12 para. 3\(3\)–\(6\)](#) omitted (1.4.2014) by virtue of [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(4\)\(c\)](#); [S.I. 2014/416](#), art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F58** Words in [Sch. 12 para. 3\(7\)](#) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(4\)\(d\)](#); [S.I. 2014/416](#), art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)

Commencement Information

- I465** Sch. 12 para. 3 in force at 1.9.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/671](#), [art. 2\(5\)](#)
I466 Sch. 12 para. 3 in force at 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2014/39](#), [art. 2\(3\)](#)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Timetable for determination on reference

- 4 (1) [^{F59}The CMA must make its determination on a reference] before the end of the period of 30 working days following the last day for the making by Monitor of a reply in accordance with paragraph 2.
- (2) If [^{F60}the CMA] is satisfied that there are good reasons for departing from the normal requirements, it may (on one occasion only) extend that period by not more than 20 working days.
- (3) The [^{F61}CMA] must ensure that an extension under sub-paragraph (2) is notified to—
- (a) Monitor,
 - (b) [^{F51}NHS England], and
 - (c) every objector who made representations in accordance with paragraph 2.

Textual Amendments

- F51** Words in Sch. 12 substituted (1.7.2022) by [Health and Care Act 2022 \(c. 31\)](#), s. 186(6), Sch. 1 para. 1(1)(2); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)
- F59** Words in Sch. 12 para. 4(1) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(5\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F60** Word in Sch. 12 para. 4(2) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(5\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F61** Word in Sch. 12 para. 4(3) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(5\)\(c\)](#); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)

Commencement Information

- I467** Sch. 12 para. 4 in force at 1.9.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/671](#), [art. 2\(5\)](#)
- I468** Sch. 12 para. 4 in force at 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2014/39](#), [art. 2\(3\)](#)

Matters to be considered on determination

- 5 (1) If the [^{F62}CMA] considers it necessary to disregard the matters referred to in sub-paragraph (2) in order to secure the making of the determination [^{F63}on a reference] within the period allowed by paragraph 4, it may do so.
- (2) The matters mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) are—
- (a) all matters raised by an objector in representations under paragraph 2 that the objector did not raise at the time of the consultation under section 118, and
 - (b) all matters raised by Monitor in replies under paragraph 2 that it did not include in the reference.

Textual Amendments

- F62** Word in Sch. 12 para. 5(1) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(6\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F63** Words in Sch. 12 para. 5(1) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(6\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)

Commencement Information

- I469** Sch. 12 para. 5 in force at 1.9.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/671](#), [art. 2\(5\)](#)

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

I470 Sch. 12 para. 5 in force at 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2014/39, art. 2\(3\)](#)

Production of documents

- 6 (1) The [^{F64}CMA] may by notice require a person to produce to it the documents specified or otherwise identified in the notice.
- (2) The power to require the production of a document is a power to require its production—
- (a) at the time and place specified in the notice, and
 - (b) in a legible form.
- (3) The [^{F65}CMA] may take copies of a document produced to it under this paragraph.

Textual Amendments

F64 Word in [Sch. 12 para. 6\(1\)](#) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\), s. 103\(3\), Sch. 6 para. 139\(7\); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2\(1\)\(d\) \(with Sch.\)](#)

F65 Word in [Sch. 12 para. 6\(3\)](#) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\), s. 103\(3\), Sch. 6 para. 139\(7\); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2\(1\)\(d\) \(with Sch.\)](#)

Commencement Information

I471 Sch. 12 para. 6 in force at 1.9.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/671, art. 2\(5\)](#)

I472 Sch. 12 para. 6 in force at 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2014/39, art. 2\(3\)](#)

Oral hearings

- 7 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule, an oral hearing may be held, and evidence may be taken on oath by [^{F66}the CMA].
- (2) [^{F67}The CMA] may administer oaths for the purposes of this Schedule.
- (3) The [^{F68}CMA] must give notice to each objector who has made representations in accordance with paragraph 2 of the time and place at which an oral hearing is to be held.
- (4) The [^{F69}CMA] may by notice require a person—
- (a) to attend at a time and place specified in the notice, and
 - (b) to give evidence [^{F70}to it] at that time and place^{F71}....
- (5) At an oral hearing, the [^{F72}CMA] may require a person who comes within sub-paragraph (6), if present at the hearing, to give evidence or to make representations.
- (6) A person comes within this sub-paragraph if the person is—
- (a) an objector who has made representations in accordance with paragraph 2,
 - (b) a person attending the hearing as a representative of a person mentioned in paragraph (a), or
 - (c) a person attending the hearing as a representative of Monitor.
- (7) A person who gives oral evidence at the hearing may be cross-examined by or on behalf of any other person who is present at the hearing and comes within sub-paragraph (6).

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (8) If a person is not present at a hearing and so cannot be made subject to a requirement under sub-paragraph (5)—
- (a) the [^{F73}CMA] is not obliged to require the person to attend the hearing, and
 - (b) the [^{F74}CMA] may make a determination on the reference without hearing that person's evidence or representations.
- (9) Where a person is required under this paragraph to attend at a place more than 10 miles from that person's place of residence, the [^{F75}CMA] must pay the person the necessary expenses of attending.

Textual Amendments

- F66** Words in Sch. 12 para. 7(1) substituted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(8)(a); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F67** Words in Sch. 12 para. 7(2) substituted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(8)(b); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F68** Word in Sch. 12 para. 7(3) substituted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(8)(c); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F69** Word in Sch. 12 para. 7(4) substituted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(8)(d)(i); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F70** Words in Sch. 12 para. 7(4)(b) inserted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(8)(d)(ii); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F71** Words in Sch. 12 para. 7(4)(b) omitted (1.4.2014) by virtue of Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(8)(d)(ii); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F72** Word in Sch. 12 para. 7(5) substituted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(8)(e); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F73** Word in Sch. 12 para. 7(8)(a) substituted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(8)(f)(i); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F74** Word in Sch. 12 para. 7(8)(b) substituted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(8)(f)(ii); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F75** Word in Sch. 12 para. 7(9) substituted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(8)(g); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)

Commencement Information

- I473** Sch. 12 para. 7 in force at 1.9.2013 for specified purposes by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(5)
- I474** Sch. 12 para. 7 in force at 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2014/39, art. 2(3)

Written statements

- 8 (1) The [^{F76}CMA] may by notice require a person to produce a written statement with respect to a matter specified in the notice to [^{F77}the CMA].
- (2) The power to require the production of a written statement includes power to specify the time and place at which it is to be produced.
- (3) The written statement must be verified in accordance with a statement of truth.
- (4) In this paragraph and paragraph 9, “statement of truth” means a statement that the person producing the document which includes the statement believes the matters stated as facts in the document to be true.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Textual Amendments

- F76** Word in Sch. 12 para. 8(1) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(9\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F77** Words in Sch. 12 para. 8(1) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(9\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)

Commencement Information

- I475** Sch. 12 para. 8 in force at 1.9.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/671](#), [art. 2\(5\)](#)
- I476** Sch. 12 para. 8 in force at 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2014/39](#), [art. 2\(3\)](#)

Defaults in relation to evidence

- 9 (1) This paragraph applies if a person (“the defaulter”)—
- (a) fails to comply with a notice or other requirement under paragraph 6, 7 or 8,
 - (b) in complying with a notice under paragraph 8, makes a statement that is false in a material particular, or
 - (c) in providing information otherwise verified in accordance with a statement of truth required by rules under paragraph 11, provides information that is false in a material particular.
- (2) A member of the ^{F78}group constituted for the purpose of carrying out functions of the CMA with respect to the reference to which the notice or requirement relates] may certify the failure, or the fact that a false statement has been made, to the High Court.
- (3) The High Court may inquire into a matter so certified.
- (4) If the High Court, having heard any witness on behalf of or against the defaulter and any statement in the defaulter's defence, is satisfied that the defaulter did, without reasonable excuse, the act referred to in sub-paragraph (1), it may punish the defaulter as if the defaulter had been guilty of contempt of court.

Textual Amendments

- F78** Words in [Sch. 12 para. 9\(2\)](#) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\)](#), s. 103(3), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(10\)](#); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)

Commencement Information

- I477** Sch. 12 para. 9 in force at 1.9.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/671](#), [art. 2\(5\)](#)
- I478** Sch. 12 para. 9 in force at 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2014/39](#), [art. 2\(3\)](#)

General provisions relating to evidence

- 10 (1) No person may be compelled to give evidence under paragraph 6, 7 or 8 which the person could not be compelled to give in civil proceedings in the High Court.
- (2) A notice under paragraph 6, 7 or 8 may be given on the ^{F79}CMA's behalf by a member of the group constituted for the purpose of carrying out functions of the CMA with respect to the reference to which the notice relates].

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Textual Amendments

F79 Words in Sch. 12 para. 10(2) substituted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(11); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)

Commencement Information

I479 Sch. 12 para. 10 in force at 1.9.2013 for specified purposes by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(5)

I480 Sch. 12 para. 10 in force at 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2014/39, art. 2(3)

Procedural rules

- 11 (1) The [^{F80}CMA Board] may make rules of procedure for determinations on references under section 120.
- (2) Those rules may include provision supplementing the provisions of this Schedule in relation to any notice, hearing or requirement for which this Schedule provides; and that provision may, in particular, impose time limits or other restrictions on—
- the taking of evidence at an oral hearing, or
 - the making of representations at an oral hearing.
- (3) The rules may apply, with or without modification, provision included in appeal rules under Schedule 22 to the Energy Act 2004.
- (4) The [^{F81}CMA Board] must publish rules made under this paragraph.
- (5) Before making rules under this paragraph, the [^{F81}CMA Board] must consult such persons as it considers appropriate.
- (6) Rules under this paragraph may make different provision for different cases.

Textual Amendments

F80 Words in Sch. 12 para. 11(1) substituted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(12)(a); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)

F81 Words in Sch. 12 para. 11(4)(5) substituted (1.4.2014) by Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24), s. 103(3), Sch. 6 para. 139(12)(b); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)

Commencement Information

I481 Sch. 12 para. 11 in force at 1.9.2013 for specified purposes by S.I. 2013/671, art. 2(5)

I482 Sch. 12 para. 11 in force at 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2014/39, art. 2(3)

Costs

- 12 [^{F82}(1) Where the CMA makes a determination on a reference under section 120 it must make an order requiring the payment to it of the costs it incurred in connection with the reference.]
- (2) Where it is determined that the method to which the reference relates is not appropriate, the order must require those costs to be paid by Monitor.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (3) Where it is determined that the method to which the reference relates is appropriate, the order must require those costs to be paid by such objectors as are specified in the order.
- (4) Where the order specifies more than one objector, it may specify the proportions in which the objectors are to be liable for the costs.
- (5) [^{F83}The CMA] may also make an order requiring Monitor or an objector who made representations in accordance with paragraph 2 to make payments to the other in respect of costs incurred by the other in connection with [^{F84}a determination on a reference under section 120].
- (6) A person required by an order under this paragraph to pay a sum to another person must comply with the order before the end of the period of 28 days beginning with the day after the making of the order.
- (7) Sums required to be paid by an order under this paragraph but not paid within that period are to carry interest at such rate as may be determined in accordance with provision in the order.

Textual Amendments

- F82** Sch. 12 para. 12(1) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\), s. 103\(3\)](#), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(13\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F83** Words in Sch. 12 para. 12(5) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\), s. 103\(3\)](#), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(13\)\(b\)\(i\)](#); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)
- F84** Words in Sch. 12 para. 12(5) substituted (1.4.2014) by [Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 \(c. 24\), s. 103\(3\)](#), [Sch. 6 para. 139\(13\)\(b\)\(ii\)](#); S.I. 2014/416, art. 2(1)(d) (with Sch.)

Commencement Information

- I483** Sch. 12 para. 12 in force at 1.9.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/671, art. 2\(5\)](#)
- I484** Sch. 12 para. 12 in force at 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2014/39, art. 2\(3\)](#)

Power to modify time limits

- 13 The Secretary of State may by order vary any period specified in this Schedule as the period within which something must be done.

Commencement Information

- I485** Sch. 12 para. 13 partly in force; Sch. 12 para. 13 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see [s. 306\(1\)\(d\)](#)
- I486** Sch. 12 para. 13 in force at 1.9.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/671, art. 2\(5\)](#)
- I487** Sch. 12 para. 13 in force at 1.4.2014 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2014/39, art. 2\(3\)](#)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

SCHEDULE 13

Section 150

PART 3: MINOR AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

General

- 1 (1) Any reference in an instrument or document to the Independent Regulator of NHS Foundation Trusts is to be read, in relation to any time after the commencement of section 61, as a reference to Monitor.
- (2) Any reference in this Act or in any other enactment, instrument or document to Monitor is to be read, in relation to any time before that commencement, as a reference to the Independent Regulator of NHS Foundation Trusts.

Commencement Information

I488 Sch. 13 para. 1 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(a)

Public Bodies (Admission to Meetings) Act 1960 (c. 67)

- 2 In the Schedule to the Public Bodies (Admission to Meetings) Act 1960, after paragraph (bj) insert—
“(bk) Monitor;”.

Commencement Information

I489 Sch. 13 para. 2 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(a)

Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (c. 13)

- 3 (1) In Schedule 2 to the Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (departments etc. subject to investigation)—
 - (a) at the appropriate place insert— “ Monitor. ”, and
 - (b) omit the entry for the Independent Regulator of NHS Foundation Trusts.
- (2) In consequence of the repeal made by sub-paragraph (1)(b), omit paragraph 17 of Schedule 2 to the Health and Social Care (Community Health and Standards) Act 2003 (which inserted the entry in question).

Commencement Information

I490 Sch. 13 para. 3 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(a)

Superannuation Act 1972 (c. 11)

- 4 (1) In Schedule 1 to the Superannuation Act 1972 (kinds of employment to which a scheme under section 1 of that Act can apply), omit the entry for the Independent Regulator of NHS Foundation Trusts.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (2) In consequence of that repeal, omit paragraph 5(3) of Schedule 2 to the Health and Social Care (Community Health and Standards) 2003 (which inserted the entry in question).

Commencement Information

I491 Sch. 13 para. 4 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(a)

House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24)

- 5 (1) In Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (other disqualifying offices)—
- (a) at the appropriate place insert— “ Chair or other member of Monitor. ”, and
 - (b) omit the entry for the Chairman and other members of the Independent Regulator of NHS Foundation Trusts.
- (2) In consequence of the repeal made by sub-paragraph (1)(b), omit paragraph 18 of Schedule 2 to the Health and Social Care (Community Health and Standards) Act 2003 (which inserted the entry in question).

Commencement Information

I492 Sch. 13 para. 5 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(a)

Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 25)

- 6 (1) In Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (other disqualifying offices)—
- (a) at the appropriate place insert— “ Chair or other member of Monitor. ”, and
 - (b) omit the entry for the Chairman and other members of the Independent Regulator of NHS Foundation Trusts.
- (2) In consequence of the repeal made by sub-paragraph (1)(b), omit paragraph 19 of Schedule 2 to the Health and Social Care (Community Health and Standards) Act 2003 (which inserted the entry in question).

Commencement Information

I493 Sch. 13 para. 6 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(a)

Freedom of Information Act 2000 (c. 36)

- 7 In Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (other public bodies and offices: general)—
- (a) at the appropriate place insert— “ Monitor. ”, and
 - (b) omit the entry for the Independent Regulator of NHS Foundation Trusts.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I494 Sch. 13 para. 7 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(a)

National Health Service Act 2006 (c. 41)

8 The National Health Service Act 2006 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I495 Sch. 13 para. 8 in force at 1.7.2012 for specified purposes by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(d)

I496 Sch. 13 para. 8 in force at 1.11.2012 for specified purposes by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

I497 Sch. 13 para. 8 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

9 (1) Omit section 31 and Schedule 8 (continuation and constitution of the Independent Regulator of NHS Foundation Trusts).

(2) In consequence of that repeal, omit paragraph 12 of Schedule 3 to the Health Act 2009 (which amended Schedule 8).

Commencement Information

I498 Sch. 13 para. 9 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2)

I499 Sch. 13 para. 9(1) in force at 1.7.2012 for specified purposes by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(b)

10 (1) Omit section 32 (general duty of regulator).

^{F85}(2)

Textual Amendments

F85 Sch. 13 para. 10(2) omitted (1.7.2022) by virtue of Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 7 para. 12; S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Commencement Information

I500 Sch. 13 para. 10 in force at 1.11.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(2) (with art. 12)

11 In section 275(1) (general interpretation), at the appropriate place, insert—

““the regulator” means Monitor.”.

Commencement Information

I501 Sch. 13 para. 11 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(c)

12 In section 276 (index of defined expressions), in the entry for “the regulator”, for “section 31(1)” substitute “section 275(1)”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I502 Sch. 13 para. 12 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(c)

National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 (c. 42)

- 13 In section 184(2)(b) of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 (matters to be contained in reports by overview and scrutiny committee of local authority), for “the Independent Regulator of NHS Foundation Trusts” substitute “Monitor”.

Commencement Information

I503 Sch. 13 para. 13 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(c)

Health and Social Care Act 2008 (c. 14)

- 14 The Health and Social Care Act 2008 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I504 Sch. 13 para. 14 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 15 In section 30(3) (urgent applications for cancellation of registration of service provider: notice requirements), for paragraph (c) substitute—
 “(c) where the person registered as a service provider is a person who holds a licence under Chapter 3 of Part 3 of the Health and Social Care Act 2012, to Monitor.”.

Commencement Information

I505 Sch. 13 para. 15 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 16 In section 39(1) (notice requirements in relation to certain matters), for paragraph (c) substitute—
 “(c) where the person registered as a service provider in respect of the activity is a person who holds a licence under Chapter 3 of Part 3 of the Health and Social Care Act 2012, to Monitor.”.

Commencement Information

I506 Sch. 13 para. 16 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 17 In section 59 (power for Secretary of State to confer additional functions on Care Quality Commission), for subsection (2) substitute—
 “(2) The Secretary of State must consult Monitor before making provision under subsection (1) in relation to persons who hold licences under Chapter 3 of Part 3 of the Health and Social Care Act 2012.”

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I507 Sch. 13 para. 17 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Health Act 2009 (c. 21)

- 18 In section 2(2) of the Health Act 2009 (bodies required to have regard to NHS Constitution), for paragraph (f) substitute—
“(f) Monitor;”.

Commencement Information

I508 Sch. 13 para. 18 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(e)

Equality Act 2010 (c.15)

- 19 In Part 1 of Schedule 19 to the Equality Act 2010 (bodies subject to public sector equality duty), for the entry for the Independent Regulator of NHS Foundation Trusts substitute “Monitor”.

Commencement Information

I509 Sch. 13 para. 19 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)(e)

PROSPECTIVE

^{F86}SCHEDULE 14

Section 179

ABOLITION OF NHS TRUSTS IN ENGLAND: CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

Textual Amendments

F86 Sch. 14 omitted (1.7.2022) by virtue of Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), s. 186(6), Sch. 7 para. 13; S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

^{F86}PART 1

AMENDMENTS OF THE NATIONAL HEALTH SERVICE ACT 2006

- ^{F86}1
^{F86}2
^{F86}3
^{F86}4

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

F865	.....
F866	.....
F867	.....
F868	.....
F869	.....
F8610	.....
F8611	.....
F8612	.....
F8613	.....
F8614	.....
F8615	.....
F8616	.....
F8617	.....
F8618	.....
F8619	.....
F8620	.....
F8621	.....
F8622	.....
F8623	.....
F8624	.....
F8625	.....
F8626	.....
F8627	.....
F8628	.....
F8629	.....
F8630	.....
F8631	.....
F8632	.....
F8633	.....
F8634	.....
F8635	.....
F8636	.....

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

F8637	.....
F8638	.....
F8639	.....
F8640	.....

F86PART 2

AMENDMENTS OF OTHER ACTS

	<i>F86Voluntary Hospitals (Paying Patients) Act 1936 (c. 17)</i>
F8641	.....

	<i>F86Public Bodies (Admission to Meetings) Act 1960 (c. 67)</i>
F8642	.....

	<i>F86Abortion Act 1967 (c. 87)</i>
F8643	.....

	<i>F86Employers' Liability (Compulsory Insurance) Act 1969 (c. 57)</i>
F8644	.....

	<i>F86Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70)</i>
F8645	.....

	<i>F86House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24)</i>
F8646	.....

	<i>F86Acquisition of Land Act 1981 (c. 67)</i>
F8647	.....

F8648	.....
F8649	.....

	<i>F86Mental Health Act 1983 (c. 20)</i>
F8650	.....

	<i>F86Disabled Persons (Services, Consultation and Representation) Act 1986 (c. 33)</i>
F8651	.....

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

	<i>F86 Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (c. 48)</i>
F8652	.....
	<i>F86 Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49)</i>
F8653	.....
	<i>F86 Road Traffic Act 1988 (c. 52)</i>
F8654	.....
	<i>F86 Access to Health Records Act 1990 (c. 23)</i>
F8655	.....
	<i>F86 Water Industry Act 1991 (c. 56)</i>
F8656	.....
	<i>F86 London Local Authorities Act 1991 (c. xiii)</i>
F8657	.....
	<i>F86 Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 (c. 4)</i>
F8658	.....
F8659	.....
F8660	.....
F8661	.....
F8662	.....
	<i>F86 Health Service Commissioners Act 1993 (c. 46)</i>
F8663	.....
	<i>F86 Vehicle Excise and Registration Act 1994 (c. 22)</i>
F8664	.....
	<i>F86 Value Added Tax Act 1994 (c. 23)</i>
F8665	.....
F8666	.....
F8667	.....

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

F86 Employment Rights Act 1996 (c. 18)

- F8668
- F8669
- F8670

F86 Audit Commission Act 1998 (c. 18)

- F8671
- F8672
- F8673

F86 Data Protection Act 1998 (c. 29)

- F8674

F86 Health Act 1999 (c. 8)

- F8675

F86 Greater London Authority Act 1999 (c. 29)

- F8676

F86 Care Standards Act 2000 (c. 14)

- F8677
- F8678
- F8679
- F8680

F86 Freedom of Information Act 2000 (c. 36)

- F8681

F86 International Development Act 2002 (c. 1)

- F8682

F86 Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (c. 41)

- F8683

F86 Community Care (Delayed Discharges etc.) Act 2003 (c. 5)

- F8684

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

F86 Finance Act 2003 (c. 14)

F8685

F8686

F8687

F86 Licensing Act 2003 (c. 17)

F8688

F86 Health and Social Care (Community Health and Standards) Act 2003 (c. 43)

F8689

F8690

F8691

F8692

F8693

F86 Finance Act 2004 (c. 12)

F8694

F86 Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004 (c. 28)

F8695

F86 Children Act 2004 (c. 31)

F8696

F8697

F8698

F8699

F86 Civil Contingencies Act 2004 (c. 36)

F86100

F86 National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 (c. 42)

F86101

F86 Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act 2007 (c. 19)

F86102

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) [View outstanding changes](#)

F86 Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007 (c. 28)

- F86 103
- F86 104
- F86 105
- F86 106

F86 Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (c. 4)

- F86 107

F86 Health and Social Care Act 2008 (c. 14)

- F86 108
- F86 109
- F86 110

F86 Autism Act 2009 (c. 15)

- F86 111

F86 Health Act 2009 (c. 21)

- F86 112
- F86 113
- F86 114

F86 Corporation Tax Act 2010 (c. 4)

- F86 115

F86 Equality Act 2010 (c. 15)

- F86 116

F86 Charities Act 2011 (c. 25)

- F86 117
- F86 118
- F86 119

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

SCHEDULE 15

Sections 230 and 231

PART 7: CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS AND SAVINGS

PART 1

ABOLITION OF THE GENERAL SOCIAL CARE COUNCIL

Amendments to the Care Standards Act 2000 (c. 14)

1 The Care Standards Act 2000 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I510 Sch. 15 para. 1 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

2 In section 55(3)(g) (power to treat persons on certain social work courses as social care workers)—

- (a) for “a Council” substitute “the Welsh Council”, and
- (b) after “section 63” insert “, or by the Health and Care Professions Council under article 15 of the Health and Social Work Professions Order 2001,”.

Commencement Information

I511 Sch. 15 para. 2 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

3 In section 56 (register of social care workers etc.)—

- (a) in subsection (1), for “Each Council” substitute “The Welsh Council”, and
- (b) in subsection (4), for “the Council” substitute “the Welsh Council”.

Commencement Information

I512 Sch. 15 para. 3 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

4 In section 57 (applications for registration), in subsection (1), for “a Council” substitute “the Welsh Council”.

Commencement Information

I513 Sch. 15 para. 4 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

5 In section 58 (grant or refusal of registration), in subsection (1) for “the Council” substitute “the Welsh Council”.

Commencement Information

I514 Sch. 15 para. 5 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

6 In section 58A (visiting social workers from relevant European States)—

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (a) in subsections (3) and (7), for “a Council” substitute “the Welsh Council”, and
- (b) in subsection (6), for “a Council, that” substitute “the Welsh Council, the”.

Commencement Information

I515 Sch. 15 para. 6 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 7 In section 59 (removal etc. from register), in subsection (1), for “Each Council” substitute “The Welsh Council”.

Commencement Information

I516 Sch. 15 para. 7 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 8 In section 60 (rules about registration), for “A Council” substitute “The Welsh Council”.

Commencement Information

I517 Sch. 15 para. 8 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 9 In section 61 (offence relating to use of title “social worker” etc.)—
- (a) in subsection (1), after “a person” insert “in Wales”,
 - (b) in subsection (2)(a), for “a Council” substitute “the Welsh Council”, and
 - (c) in subsection (2)(b), after “the law of” insert “England and Wales so far as applying in relation to England,”.

Commencement Information

I518 Sch. 15 para. 9 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 10 In section 62 (codes of practice)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “Each Council” substitute “The Welsh Council”,
 - (b) in subsections (3), (4) and (6), for “a Council” substitute “the Council”, and
 - (c) in subsection (5), after “Local authorities” insert “in Wales”.

Commencement Information

I519 Sch. 15 para. 10 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 11 In section 63 (approval of courses etc.)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “Each Council” substitute “The Welsh Council”, and
 - (b) in subsection (4), for “A Council” substitute “The Council”.

Commencement Information

I520 Sch. 15 para. 11 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- 12 In section 64 (qualifications gained outside Council's area)—
- (a) in subsection (A1), for “a Council” substitute “the Welsh Council”,
 - (b) omit subsection (1), and
 - (c) for the title substitute “Qualifications gained outside the Welsh Council's area”.

Commencement Information

I521 Sch. 15 para. 12 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 13 In section 65(1) (power to make rules requiring registered persons to undertake further training), for “A Council” substitute “The Welsh Council”.

Commencement Information

I522 Sch. 15 para. 13 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 14 In section 66 (visitors for certain social work courses)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “A Council” substitute “The Welsh Council”, and
 - (b) in subsection (3), for “a Council” substitute “the Council”.

Commencement Information

I523 Sch. 15 para. 14 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 15 In section 67 (functions of the appropriate Minister)—
- (a) in subsection (2), for “a Council” substitute “the Welsh Council”, and
 - (b) in subsection (5), omit paragraph (a) (and the “or” following it).

Commencement Information

I524 Sch. 15 para. 15 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 16 In section 68 (appeals to the Tribunal), in subsections (1) and (1A), for “a Council” substitute “the Welsh Council”.

Commencement Information

I525 Sch. 15 para. 16 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 17 In section 69 (publication etc. of register), in subsection (1), for “A Council” substitute “The Welsh Council”.

Commencement Information

I526 Sch. 15 para. 17 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 18 Omit section 70 (abolition of the Central Council for Education and Training in Social Work).

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I527 Sch. 15 para. 18 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 19 In section 71 (rules), in subsections (1), (2), (3A) and (4), for “a Council” substitute “the Welsh Council”.

Commencement Information

I528 Sch. 15 para. 19 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 20 In section 113 (default Ministerial powers), omit subsection (1).

Commencement Information

I529 Sch. 15 para. 20 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 21 In section 114 (schemes for the transfer of staff), in subsection (1), omit “, 70”.

Commencement Information

I530 Sch. 15 para. 21 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 22 In section 118 (orders and regulations), in subsection (4), omit the words from “; and” to the end.

Commencement Information

I531 Sch. 15 para. 22 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 23 In section 121 (13) (index of defined expressions)—
- (a) omit the entry for “CCETSW”,
 - (b) omit the entry for references to the Council, the English Council and the Welsh Council, and
 - (c) at the end insert—

“the Welsh Council Section 54”.

Commencement Information

I532 Sch. 15 para. 23 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 24 In section 122 (commencement), omit “section 70(2) to (5) and”.

Commencement Information

I533 Sch. 15 para. 24 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 25 In section 123 (extent), omit subsection (3).

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I534 Sch. 15 para. 25 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

26 Schedule 1 (the Care Councils) is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I535 Sch. 15 para. 26 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

27 Omit paragraph 1 (introductory).

Commencement Information

I536 Sch. 15 para. 27 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

28 In paragraph 2 (status)—
 (a) for “An authority” substitute “The Welsh Council”, and
 (b) for “an authority's” substitute “the Council's”.

Commencement Information

I537 Sch. 15 para. 28 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

29 In paragraph 3(1) (general powers), for “the Secretary of State, an authority” substitute “the Welsh Ministers, the Welsh Council”.

Commencement Information

I538 Sch. 15 para. 29 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

30 In paragraph 4 (general duty), for “an authority” substitute “the Welsh Council”.

Commencement Information

I539 Sch. 15 para. 30 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

31 For paragraph 5 (membership)—
 (a) for “Each authority” substitute “The Welsh Council”, and
 (b) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers”.

Commencement Information

I540 Sch. 15 para. 31 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

32 In paragraph 6 (appointment, procedure etc.)—
 (a) for “The Secretary of State” substitute “The Welsh Ministers”,
 (b) in paragraph (a), for “an authority” substitute “the Welsh Council”,

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (c) in paragraphs (b), (c) and (d), (in the case of paragraph (d), in each place it appears) for “an authority” substitute “the Council”, and
- (d) in paragraph (c), for “the authority” substitute “the Council”.

Commencement Information

I541 Sch. 15 para. 32 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 33 (1) Paragraph 7 (remuneration and allowances) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)—
 - (a) for “An authority” substitute “The Welsh Council”,
 - (b) for “the authority”, in each place it appears, substitute “the Council”, and
 - (c) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers”.
 - (3) In sub-paragraph (2)—
 - (a) for “the Secretary of State so determines” substitute “the Welsh Ministers so determine”,
 - (b) for “an authority”, in each place it appears, substitute “the Council”, and
 - (c) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers”.
 - (4) In sub-paragraph (3)—
 - (a) for “the Secretary of State determines” substitute “the Welsh Ministers determine”,
 - (b) for “an authority” substitute “the Council”,
 - (c) for “the authority” substitute “the Council”, and
 - (d) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers”.

Commencement Information

I542 Sch. 15 para. 33 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 34 (1) Paragraph 8 (chief officer) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)—
 - (a) for “each authority” substitute “the Welsh Council”, and
 - (b) for “the authority”, in each place it appears, substitute “the Council”.
 - (3) In sub-paragraph (2), for “the Secretary of State”, in each place it appears, substitute “the Welsh Ministers”.
 - (4) In sub-paragraph (3), for “the authority” substitute “the Council”.
 - (5) In sub-paragraph (4), for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers”.

Commencement Information

I543 Sch. 15 para. 34 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 35 (1) Paragraph 12 (staff) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1), for “An authority” substitute “The Welsh Council”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (3) In sub-paragraph (2)—
 - (a) for “an authority” substitute “the Council”, and
 - (b) for “the authority” substitute “the Council”.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3), for “an authority” substitute “the Council”.
- (5) In sub-paragraph (4)—
 - (a) for “Secretary of State” substitute “Welsh Ministers”,
 - (b) in paragraph (a), for “an authority” substitute “the Council”, and
 - (c) in paragraph (c), for “the authority” substitute “the Council”.

Commencement Information

I544 Sch. 15 para. 35 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 36 (1) Paragraph 13 (delegation of functions) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)—
 - (a) for “An authority” substitute “The Welsh Council”, and
 - (b) for “the authority” substitute “the Council”.
 - (3) In sub-paragraph (2)—
 - (a) for “An authority” substitute “The Council”, and
 - (b) for “the authority” substitute “the Council”.

Commencement Information

I545 Sch. 15 para. 36 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 37 In paragraph 14 (arrangements for the use of staff)—
- (a) for “The Secretary of State” substitute “The Welsh Ministers”,
 - (b) in paragraph (a), for “an authority” substitute “the Welsh Council”, and
 - (c) in paragraph (b), for “an authority” substitute “the Council”, and for “the authority” substitute “the Council”.

Commencement Information

I546 Sch. 15 para. 37 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 38 In paragraph 16 (payments to authorities)—
- (a) for “The Secretary of State” substitute “The Welsh Ministers”,
 - (b) for “an authority” substitute “the Welsh Council”, and
 - (c) for “he considers” substitute “they consider”.

Commencement Information

I547 Sch. 15 para. 38 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 39 (1) Paragraph 18 (accounts) is amended as follows.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) for “An authority” substitute “The Welsh Council”, and
 - (b) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers”.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2)—
- (a) for “An authority” substitute “The Council”, and
 - (b) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers”.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3)—
- (a) for “An authority” substitute “The Council”,
 - (b) for “the Secretary of State”, in each place it appears, substitute “the Welsh Ministers”, and
 - (c) for “the Comptroller and Auditor General” substitute “the Auditor General for Wales”.
- (5) In sub-paragraph (4)—
- (a) for “The Comptroller and Auditor General” substitute “The Auditor General for Wales”, and
 - (b) for “Parliament” substitute “the Assembly”.
- (6) In sub-paragraph (5)—
- (a) for “an authority” substitute “the Council”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (a), for “the authority” substitute “the Council”.

Commencement Information

I548 Sch. 15 para. 39 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 40 (1) Paragraph 19 (reports etc.) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) for “an authority” substitute “the Welsh Council”, and
 - (b) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers”.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2)—
- (a) for “An Authority” substitute “The Council”,
 - (b) for “the Secretary of State” substitute “the Welsh Ministers”, and
 - (c) for “he” substitute “they”.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3), for “the authority” substitute “the Council”.

Commencement Information

I549 Sch. 15 para. 40 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 41 In paragraph 20 (application of seal)—
- (a) for “an authority” substitute “the Welsh Council”, and
 - (b) in paragraphs (a) and (b), for “the authority” substitute “the Council”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I550 Sch. 15 para. 41 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

42 In paragraph 21 (evidence), for “an authority” substitute “the Welsh Council”.

Commencement Information

I551 Sch. 15 para. 42 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

43 For the title to Schedule 1 substitute “The Welsh Council”.

Commencement Information

I552 Sch. 15 para. 43 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

Amendments to the Health and Social Care Act 2008 (c. 14)

44 The Health and Social Care Act 2008 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I553 Sch. 15 para. 44 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 45 (1) In section 124 (regulation of social care workers)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “appropriate Minister”, in each place it appears, substitute “Welsh Ministers”,
 - (b) in that subsection, for “their regulation” substitute “the regulation of social care workers”, and
 - (c) in subsection (3), omit the definition of “the appropriate Minister”.
- (2) For the title to that section substitute “Regulation of social care workers: Wales”.

Commencement Information

I554 Sch. 15 para. 45 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 46 Section 125 (standard of proof in proceedings relating to registration of social care worker)—
- (a) in subsection (2), for “a committee of a Council, a Council itself or any officer of a Council” substitute “the Care Council for Wales, a committee of the Council or any officer of the Council”, and
 - (b) in subsection (3), omit paragraph (a).

Commencement Information

I555 Sch. 15 para. 46 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- 47 (1) Section 126 (education and training of approved mental health professionals) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) for “appropriate Minister” substitute “Welsh Ministers”, and
 - (b) omit “the General Social Care Council or”.
- (3) In subsection (4), omit the definition of “the appropriate Minister”.
- (4) For the title to section 126 substitute “Education and training of approved mental health professionals: Wales”.

Commencement Information

I556 Sch. 15 para. 47 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 48 In section 171(4) (provisions which Welsh Ministers have power to commence), before paragraph (a) insert—
- “(za) sections 124 and 125 and Schedule 9 (regulation of social care workers: Wales) and section 126 (education and training of approved mental health professionals: Wales).”

Commencement Information

I557 Sch. 15 para. 48 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 49 (1) Schedule 9 (regulation of social care workers) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 1 (interpretation), for the definition of “the appropriate Council” substitute—
- ““the Council” means the Care Council for Wales.”
- (3) In paragraph 2 (matters generally within the scope of regulations), in paragraphs (a) and (h), for “the appropriate Council” substitute “the Council”.
- (4) In paragraph 5 (payments), in paragraph (b), for “the appropriate Council” substitute “the Council”.
- (5) In paragraph 6 (sub-delegation), in paragraph (a), omit the words from “Ministers of the Crown” to “Welsh Ministers, on”.
- (6) In paragraph 8 (matters outside the scope of regulations)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), omit “the General Social Care Council or”,
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (2), for “either of those Councils” substitute “the Council”, and
 - (c) in that sub-paragraph, for “that Council” substitute “the Council”.
- (7) Omit paragraph 9 (preliminary procedure for making regulations: England).
- (8) For the title to that Schedule substitute “Regulation of social care workers: Wales”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I558 Sch. 15 para. 49 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

Amendments to other Acts

- 50 In the following provisions, omit the entry for the General Social Care Council—
- (a) the Schedule to the Public Bodies (Admission to Meetings) Act 1960,
 - (b) Schedule 2 to the Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967,
 - (c) Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975,
 - (d) Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975, and
 - (e) Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

Commencement Information

I559 Sch. 15 para. 50 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 51 In section 343 of the Income Tax (Earning and Pensions) Act 2003 (deductions for professional membership fees), in paragraph 1 of the Table in subsection (2), omit sub-paragraph (o).

Commencement Information

I560 Sch. 15 para. 51 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 52 In section 41 of the Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 (registers: duty to refer), in entry number 8 in the table in subsection (7)—
- (a) in the first column, after “social care workers” insert “in Wales”, and
 - (b) in the second column, for the words from “General” to the end substitute “Care Council for Wales”.

Commencement Information

I561 Sch. 15 para. 52 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

PART 2

THE HEALTH AND CARE PROFESSIONS COUNCIL

- 53 (1) A reference in any instrument or document to the Health Professions Council is to be read, in relation to any time after the commencement of section 214(1), as a reference to the Health and Care Professions Council.
- (2) A reference in this Act or any other enactment, or in any other instrument or document, to the Health and Care Professions Council is to be read, in relation to any time before the commencement of section 214(1), as a reference to the Health Professions Council.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (3) In sub-paragraph (2), “enactment” means an enactment contained in, or in an instrument made under—
- (a) an Act of Parliament,
 - (b) an Act of the Scottish Parliament,
 - (c) an Act or Measure of the National Assembly for Wales, or
 - (d) Northern Ireland legislation.

Commencement Information

I562 Sch. 15 para. 53 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 54 In Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975, at the appropriate place insert— “ The Health and Care Professions Council ”.

Commencement Information

I563 Sch. 15 para. 54 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 55 In Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975, at the appropriate place insert— “ The Health and Care Professions Council ”.

Commencement Information

I564 Sch. 15 para. 55 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 56 In the following provisions, for “the Health Professions Council” substitute “the Health and Care Professions Council”—
- (a) Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000,
 - (b) section 25(3)(gb) of the National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002,
 - (c) section 4(4)(a) of the Health (Wales) Act 2003,
 - (d) paragraph 1(f) of the Table in section 343(2) of the Income Tax (Earning and Pensions) Act 2003,
 - (e) paragraph 16 of Schedule 3 to the Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006, and
 - (f) sections 17(5)(c)(viii) and 30A(5) of the Protection of Vulnerable Groups (Scotland) Act 2007.

Commencement Information

I565 Sch. 15 para. 56 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

- 57 In section 257(3) of the Armed Forces Act 2006 (definition of “registered social worker”), for paragraph (a) substitute—
- “(a) the Health and Care Professions Council;”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I566 Sch. 15 para. 57 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

58 After section 30A(5) of the Protection of Vulnerable Groups (Scotland) Act 2007, insert—

“(6) The reference in subsection (5) to the Health and Care Professions Council does not include a reference to that body in so far as it has functions relating to the social work profession in England or social care workers in England (each of those expressions having the same meaning as in section 60 of the Health Act 1999).”

Commencement Information

I567 Sch. 15 para. 58 in force at 1.8.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(4)

PART 3

THE PROFESSIONAL STANDARDS AUTHORITY FOR HEALTH AND SOCIAL CARE

General

- 59 (1) A reference in any instrument or document to the Council for Healthcare Regulatory Excellence is to be read, in relation to any time after the commencement of section 222(1), as a reference to the Professional Standards Authority for Health and Social Care.
- (2) A reference in this Act or any other enactment, or in any other instrument or document, to the Professional Standards Authority for Health and Social Care is to be read, in relation to any time before the commencement of section 222(1), as a reference to the Council for Healthcare Regulatory Excellence.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2), “enactment” means an enactment contained in, or in an instrument made under—
- (a) an Act of Parliament,
 - (b) an Act of the Scottish Parliament,
 - (c) an Act or Measure of the National Assembly for Wales, or
 - (d) Northern Ireland legislation.

Commencement Information

I568 Sch. 15 para. 59 in force at 1.12.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(3)

Health Act 1999 (c. 8)

- 60 In section 60(1) of the Health Act 1999—
- (a) in paragraph (c), for “the Council for Healthcare Regulatory Excellence” substitute “the Professional Standards Authority for Health and Social Care”, and

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(b) in each of paragraphs (d) and (e), for “Council” substitute “Authority”.

Commencement Information

I569 Sch. 15 para. 60 in force at 1.12.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(3)

61 In paragraph 7(4) of Schedule 3 to that Act, for “the Council for Healthcare Regulatory Excellence” substitute “the Professional Standards Authority for Health and Social Care”.

Commencement Information

I570 Sch. 15 para. 61 in force at 1.12.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(3)

National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17)

62 In each of the following provisions of the National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002, for “Council” substitute “Authority”—

- (a) section 25(2), (2A) and (4),
- (b) section 26(1), (2), (3) and (4),
- (c) section 26A(1) (in each place it appears) and (2),
- (d) section 26B(1) and (4) (in each case, in each place it appears),
- (e) section 27(1), (2), (4), (10) and (14),
- (f) section 28(1), (2)(b), (e), (f), (g), (h) and (j), (3)(a), (b) and (d) and (4),
- (g) section 29(4) and (7) (in each case, in each place it appears),
- (h) in Schedule 7, paragraphs 2, 6(a), (b) and (c) (in each place it appears), 7, 8, 9(1) and (2), 10(1) and (2) (in each case, in each place it appears), 11(1) (in each place it appears), (2), (3) and (4), 12(1) (in each place it appears) and (2), 13, 14(1), (2), (3), (4), (7), (8) and (9), 15(1), (2), (3), (4) and (7) (a), 16(1), (1A)(a) and (b), (2), (3) and (4), 17 (in each place it appears), 18 and 19(1) and (2)(a) and (b),
- (i) the title of each of sections 26, 27 and 29, and
- (j) the cross-heading preceding each of paragraphs 14 and 19 of Schedule 7.

Commencement Information

I571 Sch. 15 para. 62 in force at 1.12.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(3)

63 In sections 26(6), 27(3) and 29(6) of, and paragraphs 1 and 4 of Schedule 7 to, that Act for “The Council” substitute “The Authority”.

Commencement Information

I572 Sch. 15 para. 63 in force at 1.12.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(3)

64 Omit section 26(12) of that Act.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I573 Sch. 15 para. 64 in force at 1.12.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(3)

- 65 In section 26A(2) of, and paragraph 1 of Schedule 7 to, that Act for “Council's” substitute “Authority's”.

Commencement Information

I574 Sch. 15 para. 65 in force at 1.12.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(3)

- 66 For the title to Schedule 7 substitute “The Professional Standards Authority for Health and Social Care”.

Commencement Information

I575 Sch. 15 para. 66 in force at 1.12.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(3)

Other Acts, etc.

- 67 In section 36A(1)(b) of the Dentists Act 1984 (professions complementary to dentistry), for “regulated by the Council for Healthcare Regulatory Excellence under section 25” substitute “listed in section 25(3)”.

Commencement Information

I576 Sch. 15 para. 67 in force at 1.12.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(3)

- 68 In each of the following provisions, for “the Council for Healthcare Regulatory Excellence” substitute “the Professional Standards Authority for Health and Social Care”—
- (a) paragraphs 1(bca) and 2(ca) of the Schedule to the Public Bodies (Admission to Meetings) Act 1960,
 - (b) paragraph (b) of the definition of “relevant disciplinary proceedings” in section 201(4) of the National Health Service Act 2006, and
 - (c) paragraph (b) of the definition of “relevant disciplinary proceedings” in section 149(4) of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006.

Commencement Information

I577 Sch. 15 para. 68 in force at 1.12.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(3)

- 69 (1) In each of the following provisions, omit the entry for “The Council for Healthcare Regulatory Excellence”—
- (a) Schedule 1 to the Public Records Act 1958,
 - (b) Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975,
 - (c) Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975, and
 - (d) Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2) In each of the provisions listed in sub-paragraph (1), at the appropriate place insert — “ The Professional Standards Authority for Health and Social Care ”.
- (3) Omit paragraph 26(a) of Schedule 10 to the Health and Social Care Act 2008 (which provides for the inclusion of a reference to the Council for Healthcare Regulatory Excellence in the National Assembly for Wales (Disqualification) Order 2006, which has itself been revoked).

Commencement Information

I578 Sch. 15 para. 69 in force at 1.12.2012 by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(3)

PART 4

THE OFFICE OF THE HEALTH PROFESSIONS ADJUDICATOR

Miscellaneous amendments

- 70 In the Schedule to the Public Bodies (Admission to Meetings) Act 1960, omit paragraphs 1(bcb) and 2(cb).

Commencement Information

I579 Sch. 15 para. 70 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)

- 71 (1) Omit the entry for the Office of the Health Professions Adjudicator in each of the following—
- (a) Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975,
 - (b) Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975,
 - (c) Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000, and
 - (d) the table in Article 2 of the Administrative Justice and Tribunals Council (Listed Tribunals) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/2951).
- (2) In consequence of those repeals, omit paragraphs 4(b), 5(b) and 13(b) of Schedule 10 to the Health and Social Care Act 2008 and the preceding “and” in each case.
 - (3) Omit paragraph 26(b) of Schedule 10 to the Health and Social Care Act 2008 (which inserts a reference to the OHPA in the National Assembly for Wales (Disqualification) Order 2006, which has itself been revoked).
 - (4) Omit paragraph 27 of that Schedule (which inserts a reference to the OHPA in the Pharmacists and Pharmacy Technicians Order 2007, which has itself been revoked).

Commencement Information

I580 Sch. 15 para. 71 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Amendments to the Health Act 1999 (c. 8)

- 72 (1) The Health Act 1999 is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit section 60(1)(f) (power to modify constitution or functions of OHPA).
- (3) In consequence of that repeal, omit paragraph 1(2) of Schedule 8 to the Health and Social Care Act 2008.
- (4) In paragraph 8(2A) of Schedule 3 (provision under section 60 as to functions relating to unfitness to practise must provide for functions to be exercised by relevant regulatory body or OHPA), omit “or the Office of the Health Professions Adjudicator”.
- (5) In section 60A(2) (standard of proof in fitness to practise proceedings before OHPA or regulatory bodies), omit paragraph (a) and the “or” following it.

Commencement Information

I581 Sch. 15 para. 72 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)

*Amendments to the National Health Service Reform
and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17)*

- 73 (1) In section 29 of the National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (reference of disciplinary cases by the Council for Healthcare Regulatory Excellence to the court), in subsection (1)—
- (a) in paragraph (c), omit “otherwise than by reason of his physical or mental health”, and
- (b) in paragraph (f), omit the words from “, other than a direction” to the end.
- (2) In consequence of those repeals, omit section 118(2)(b) and (d), (5) and (6) of the Health and Social Care Act 2008.

Commencement Information

I582 Sch. 15 para. 73 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)

Amendments to the Health Act 2006 (c. 28)

- 74 (1) Omit section 60(3)(b) of the Health Act 2006 (Appointments Commission to exercise functions of Privy Council relating to appointment of members of OHPA) and the “or” immediately preceding it.
- (2) Omit section 63(6A) and (6B) of that Act (Appointments Commission to assist OHPA with exercise of appointment functions).
- (3) In consequence of those repeals, omit paragraph 22 of Schedule 10 to the Health and Social Care Act 2008.

Commencement Information

I583 Sch. 15 para. 74 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Amendments to the Health and Social Care Act 2008 (c. 14)

- 75 (1) The Health and Social Care Act 2008 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 128 (interpretation), omit the definition of “the OHPA”.
- (3) In section 162 (orders and regulations), omit subsections (1)(b) and (c) and (4).
- (4) In Schedule 10 (amendments relating to Part 2 of that Act), omit paragraphs 7, 9, 14, 15 and 18.

Commencement Information

I584 Sch. 15 para. 75 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)

Savings

- 76 (1) If abolition is to occur at a time other than immediately after the end of a financial year within the meaning of paragraphs 19 and 20 of Schedule 6 to the Health and Social Care Act 2008 (annual reports), the period that begins with the 1 April before abolition and ends with abolition is to be treated as a financial year for the purposes of those paragraphs.
- (2) Despite section 231(2), paragraphs 19 and 20 of that Schedule are to continue to have effect for the purpose of imposing the duties under paragraphs 19(2), (3)(b) and (4) to (6) and 20(1), (2)(b) and (3) and for the purpose of conferring the power under paragraph 20(4); and for those purposes—
- (a) the duties under paragraphs 19(2) and 20(1), in so far as they have not been discharged by the OHPA, must be discharged by the Secretary of State,
- (b) the duties under paragraphs 19(3)(b) and (4) and 20(2)(b) must be discharged by the Secretary of State, and
- (c) the power conferred by paragraph 20(4) may be exercised by giving directions of the description in question to the Secretary of State.
- (3) Subject to that, anything which the OHPA is required to do under an enactment before abolition may, in so far as it has not been done by the OHPA, be done by the Secretary of State after abolition.

Commencement Information

I585 Sch. 15 para. 76 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)

- 77 A reference in any document to the OHPA is, so far as necessary or appropriate in consequence of section 231(1), to be read after abolition as a reference to the Secretary of State.

Commencement Information

I586 Sch. 15 para. 77 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)

- 78 In paragraphs 76 and 77—
“abolition” means the commencement of section 231(1);

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

“enactment” includes an enactment contained in subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978);

“the OHPA” means the Office of the Health Professions Adjudicator.

Commencement Information

I587 Sch. 15 para. 78 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)

SCHEDULE 16

Section 232

THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE FOR HEALTH AND CARE EXCELLENCE

Membership, appointment, etc.

- 1 (1) NICE consists of—
- (a) at least six members appointed by the Secretary of State (referred to in this Schedule as the “non-executive members”), and
 - (b) at least three but not more than five other members appointed by the non-executive members (referred to in this Schedule as the “executive members”).
- (2) One of the non-executive members must be appointed as the chair.
- (3) One of the executive members must be appointed as the chief executive; but the appointment may not be made without the approval of the Secretary of State.
- (4) The executive members are employees of NICE.
- (5) Regulations may—
- (a) prescribe the number of executive members (subject to sub-paragraph (1)(b)), and
 - (b) provide that all or any of the executive members (other than the chief executive) must hold posts of descriptions specified in the regulations.

Commencement Information

I588 Sch. 16 para. 1 partly in force; Sch. 16 para. 1 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)

I589 Sch. 16 para. 1 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Tenure of non-executive office

- 2 (1) The chair and other non-executive members—
- (a) hold and vacate office in accordance with the terms of their appointments, but
 - (b) may resign office by giving notice to the Secretary of State.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (2) The Secretary of State may remove a person from office as the chair or other non-executive member on any of the following grounds—
 - (a) incapacity,
 - (b) misbehaviour, or
 - (c) failure to carry out his or her duties as a non-executive member.
- (3) The Secretary of State may suspend a person from office as the chair or other non-executive member if it appears to the Secretary of State that there are or may be grounds to remove the person from office under sub-paragraph (2).
- (4) A non-executive member may not be appointed for a period of more than four years.
- (5) A person who ceases to be the chair or another non-executive member is eligible for re-appointment.

Commencement Information

I590 Sch. 16 para. 2 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Suspension from non-executive office

- 3 (1) This paragraph applies where a person is suspended under paragraph 2(3).
- (2) The Secretary of State must give notice of the decision to the person; and the suspension takes effect on receipt by the person of the notice.
- (3) The notice may be—
 - (a) delivered in person (in which case, the person is taken to receive it when it is delivered), or
 - (b) sent by first class post to the person's last known address (in which case, the person is taken to receive it on the third day after the day on which it is posted).
- (4) The initial period of suspension must not exceed six months.
- (5) The Secretary of State may at any time review the suspension.
- (6) The Secretary of State—
 - (a) must review the suspension if requested in writing by the person to do so, but
 - (b) need not review the suspension less than three months after the beginning of the initial period of suspension.
- (7) Following a review during a period of suspension, the Secretary of State may—
 - (a) revoke the suspension, or
 - (b) suspend the person for another period of not more than six months from the expiry of the current period.
- (8) The Secretary of State must revoke the suspension if the Secretary of State—
 - (a) decides that there are no grounds to remove the person from office under paragraph 2(2), or
 - (b) decides that there are grounds to do so but does not remove the person from office under that provision.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I591 Sch. 16 para. 3 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 4
- (1) This paragraph applies where a person is suspended from office as the chair under paragraph 2(3).
 - (2) The Secretary of State may appoint a non-executive member as the interim chair to exercise the chair's functions.
 - (3) The interim chair—
 - (a) holds and vacates office in accordance with the terms of the appointment, but
 - (b) may resign office by giving notice in writing to the Secretary of State.
 - (4) Appointment as interim chair is for a term not exceeding the shorter of—
 - (a) the period ending with either—
 - (i) the appointment of a new chair, or
 - (ii) the revocation or expiry of the existing chair's suspension, and
 - (b) the remainder of the interim chair's term as a non-executive member.
 - (5) A person who ceases to be the interim chair is eligible for re-appointment.

Commencement Information

I592 Sch. 16 para. 4 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Remuneration etc. of non-executive members

- 5
- (1) NICE must pay to the non-executive members such remuneration and allowances as the Secretary of State may determine.
 - (2) NICE must pay or make provision for the payment of such pensions, allowances or gratuities as the Secretary of State may determine to or in respect of any person who is or has been a non-executive member.
 - (3) If a person ceases to be a non-executive member and the Secretary of State decides that there are exceptional circumstances which mean that the person should be compensated, NICE must pay compensation to the person of such amount as the Secretary of State may determine.

Commencement Information

I593 Sch. 16 para. 5 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Staff

- 6
- (1) NICE may appoint such persons to be employees of NICE as it considers appropriate.
 - (2) Employees of NICE are to be paid such remuneration and allowances as NICE may determine.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (3) Employees of NICE are to be appointed on such other terms and conditions as NICE may determine.
- (4) NICE may pay or make provision for the payment of such pensions, allowances or gratuities as it may determine to or in respect of any person who is or has been an employee of NICE.
- (5) Before making a determination as to remuneration, pensions, allowances or gratuities for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) or (4), NICE must obtain the approval of the Secretary of State to its policy on that matter.

Commencement Information

I594 Sch. 16 para. 6 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Committees

- 7 (1) NICE may appoint such committees and sub-committees as it considers appropriate.
- (2) A committee or sub-committee may consist of or include persons who are not members or employees of NICE.
- (3) NICE may pay such remuneration and allowances as it may determine to any person who—
 - (a) is a member of a committee or sub-committee, but
 - (b) is not an employee of NICE,whether or not that person is a non-executive member of NICE.

Commencement Information

I595 Sch. 16 para. 7 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Procedure

- 8 (1) NICE may regulate its own procedure.
- (2) But regulations may make provision about procedures to be adopted by NICE for dealing with conflicts of interest of members of NICE or members of a committee or sub-committee.
- (3) The validity of any act of NICE is not affected by any vacancy among the members or by any defect in the appointment of a member.

Commencement Information

I596 Sch. 16 para. 8 partly in force; Sch. 16 para. 8 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)

I597 Sch. 16 para. 8 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Exercise of functions

- 9 NICE may arrange for the exercise of its functions on its behalf by—
- (a) a non-executive member;
 - (b) an employee (including an executive member);
 - (c) a committee or sub-committee.

Commencement Information

I598 Sch. 16 para. 9 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

General powers

- 10 (1) NICE may do anything which appears to it to be necessary or expedient for the purposes of, or in connection with, the exercise of its functions.
- (2) But, except as provided by paragraph 11(3), NICE has no power to borrow money.
- (3) NICE may do any of the following only with the approval of the Secretary of State—
- (a) form, or participate in the forming of, companies,
 - (b) invest in companies (whether by acquiring assets, securities or rights or otherwise), and
 - (c) provide loans and guarantees and make other kinds of financial provision to or in respect of companies.
- (4) The approval of the Secretary of State may be given for the purposes of sub-paragraph (3) subject to such conditions as the Secretary of State thinks appropriate.
- (5) In this paragraph “company” has the same meaning as in the Companies Acts (see section 1(1) of the Companies Act 2006).

Commencement Information

I599 Sch. 16 para. 10 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Finance

- 11 (1) The Secretary of State may make payments to NICE out of money provided by Parliament of such amounts as the Secretary of State thinks appropriate.
- (2) Payments made under sub-paragraph (1) may be made at such times and on such conditions (if any) as the Secretary of State thinks appropriate.
- (3) The Secretary of State may lend money to NICE on such terms (including as to repayment and interest) as the Secretary of State may determine.

Commencement Information

I600 Sch. 16 para. 11 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Reports

- 12 (1) As soon as practicable after the end of each financial year, NICE must prepare an annual report on how it has exercised its functions during the year.
- (2) NICE must—
- (a) lay a copy of the report before Parliament, and
 - (b) once it has done so, send a copy of it to the Secretary of State.
- (3) NICE must provide the Secretary of State with such other reports and information relating to the exercise of NICE's functions as the Secretary of State may require.
- (4) In this paragraph and paragraph 14 “financial year” means—
- (a) the period beginning on the day on which section 232 comes into force and ending on the following 31 March;
 - (b) each successive period of 12 months.

Commencement Information

I601 Sch. 16 para. 12 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Accounts

- 13 (1) NICE must keep proper accounts and proper records in relation to the accounts.
- (2) The Secretary of State may, with the approval of the Treasury, give directions to NICE as to—
- (a) the content and form of its accounts, and
 - (b) the methods and principles to be applied in the preparation of its accounts.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2) a reference to accounts includes NICE's annual accounts prepared under paragraph 14 and any interim accounts prepared by virtue of paragraph 15.

Commencement Information

I602 Sch. 16 para. 13 partly in force; Sch. 16 para. 13 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)

I603 Sch. 16 para. 13 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 14 (1) NICE must prepare annual accounts in respect of each financial year.
- (2) NICE must send copies of the annual accounts to the Secretary of State and the Comptroller and Auditor General within such period after the end of the financial year to which the accounts relate as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (3) The Comptroller and Auditor General must—
- (a) examine, certify and report on the annual accounts, and
 - (b) lay copies of them and the report before Parliament.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

- I604** Sch. 16 para. 14 partly in force; Sch. 16 para. 14 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)
- I605** Sch. 16 para. 14 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 15 (1) The Secretary of State may, with the approval of the Treasury, direct NICE to prepare accounts in respect of such period or periods as may be specified in the direction (“interim accounts”).
- (2) NICE must send copies of any interim accounts to the Secretary of State and the Comptroller and Auditor General within such period as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (3) The Comptroller and Auditor General must—
- (a) examine, certify and report on any interim accounts sent by virtue of subparagraph (2), and
 - (b) if the Secretary of State so directs—
 - (i) send a copy of the report on the accounts to the Secretary of State, and
 - (ii) lay copies of them and the report before Parliament.

Commencement Information

- I606** Sch. 16 para. 15 partly in force; Sch. 16 para. 15 in force for specified purposes at Royal Assent, see s. 306(1)(d)
- I607** Sch. 16 para. 15 in force at 1.4.2013 in so far as not already in force by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Seal and evidence

- 16 (1) The application of NICE's seal must be authenticated by the signature of the chair or of any employee who has been authorised (generally or specifically) for that purpose.
- (2) A document purporting to be duly executed under NICE's seal or to be signed on its behalf must be received in evidence and, unless the contrary is proved, taken to be so executed or signed.

Commencement Information

- I608** Sch. 16 para. 16 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Status

- 17 (1) NICE must not be regarded as the servant or agent of the Crown or as enjoying any status, immunity or privilege of the Crown.
- (2) NICE's property must not be regarded as property of, or property held on behalf of, the Crown.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I609 Sch. 16 para. 17 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

SCHEDULE 17

Section 249

PART 8: CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

Public Bodies (Admission to Meetings) Act 1960 (c. 67)

- 1 In the Schedule to the Public Bodies (Admission to Meetings) Act 1960 (bodies to which that Act applies) in paragraph 1, after paragraph (m) insert—
“(n) the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence;”.

Commencement Information

I610 Sch. 17 para. 1 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (c. 13)

- 2 In Schedule 2 to the Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (departments etc. subject to investigation) at the appropriate place insert— “ National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. ”

Commencement Information

I611 Sch. 17 para. 2 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70)

- 3 In section 113 of the Local Government Act 1972 (placing of staff of local authorities at disposal of other local authorities and health bodies) in subsection (1A)—
(a) after “agreement with” insert “the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence;”,
(b) in paragraph (a), after “disposal of” insert “the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence;”, and
(c) in paragraph (b), after “employed by” insert “the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence;”.

Commencement Information

I612 Sch. 17 para. 3 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24)

- 4 In Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (bodies of which all members are disqualified) at the appropriate place insert— “ The National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. ”

Commencement Information

I613 Sch. 17 para. 4 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 25)

- 5 In Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (bodies of which all members are disqualified) at the appropriate place insert— “ The National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. ”

Commencement Information

I614 Sch. 17 para. 5 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Employment Rights Act 1996 (c. 18)

- 6 (1) The Employment Rights Act 1996 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 50 (right to time off for public duties) in subsection (8), after paragraph (ab) insert—
 “(ac) the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.”.
- (3) In section 218 (change of employer) in subsection (10), after paragraph (cb) insert—
 “(cc) the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.”.

Commencement Information

I615 Sch. 17 para. 6 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Data Protection Act 1998 (c. 29)

- 7 In section 69 of the Data Protection Act 1998 (meaning of “health professional”) in subsection (3), after paragraph (fa) insert—
 “(fb) the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.”.

Commencement Information

I616 Sch. 17 para. 7 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Freedom of Information Act 2000 (c. 36)

- 8 In Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (other public bodies and offices: general) at the appropriate place insert— “ The National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. ”

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I617 Sch. 17 para. 8 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

International Development Act 2002 (c. 1)

- 9 In Schedule 1 to the International Development Act 2002 (bodies which may enter agreements to provide international development assistance etc.) after the entry for an NHS foundation trust insert— “ The National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. ”

Commencement Information

I618 Sch. 17 para. 9 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

National Health Service Act 2006 (c. 41)

- 10 (1) The National Health Service Act 2006 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 9 (NHS contracts) in subsection (4), after paragraph (k) insert—
“(ka) NICE,”.
- (3) In section 71 (schemes for losses and liabilities of certain health service bodies) in subsection (2), after paragraph (d) insert—
“(da) NICE,”.
- (4) In section 72 (co-operation between NHS bodies)—
(a) the existing text becomes subsection (1), and
(b) after that subsection insert—
“(2) For the purposes of this section, NICE is an NHS body.”
- (5) In section 275 (interpretation) in subsection (1), after the definition of “NHS trust” insert—
““NICE” means the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence;”.

Commencement Information

I619 Sch. 17 para. 10 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 (c. 42)

- 11 In section 7 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 (NHS contracts) in subsection (4), after paragraph (k) insert—
“(ka) the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence,”.

Commencement Information

I620 Sch. 17 para. 11 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Health and Social Care Act 2008 (c. 14)

- 12 (1) The Health and Social Care Act 2008 is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit section 45 (standards set by the Secretary of State) and the preceding cross-heading.
- (3) In section 53 (information and advice given by Care Quality Commission to Secretary of State) in subsection (3)—
- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) insert “or”, and
 - (b) omit paragraph (c) and the word “or” immediately preceding it.

Commencement Information

I621 Sch. 17 para. 12 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Health Act 2009 (c. 21)

- 13 In section 2 of the Health Act 2009 (duty to have regard to the NHS Constitution) in subsection (2), after paragraph (d) insert—
- “(da) the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence;”.

Commencement Information

I622 Sch. 17 para. 13 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Equality Act 2010 (c. 15)

- 14 In Part 1 of Schedule 19 to the Equality Act 2010 (bodies subject to public sector equality duty) at the end of the group of entries for bodies whose functions relate to the health service add— “The National Institute for Health and Care Excellence.”

Commencement Information

I623 Sch. 17 para. 14 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Textual Amendments

F87 Sch. 18 omitted (1.2.2023) by virtue of *The Health and Social Care Information Centre (Transfer of Functions, Abolition and Transitional Provisions) Regulations 2023* (S.I. 2023/98), reg. 1(2), **Sch. para. 17(31)** (with reg. 3)

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

SCHEDULE 19

Section 277

PART 9: CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

Public Bodies (Admission to Meetings) Act 1960 (c. 67)

- 1 In the Schedule to the Public Bodies (Admission to Meetings) Act 1960 (bodies to which that Act applies) in paragraph 1, after paragraph (n) (inserted by Schedule 17) insert—

“(o) the Health and Social Care Information Centre.”

Commencement Information

I624 Sch. 19 para. 1 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (c. 13)

- 2 In Schedule 2 to the Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (departments etc. subject to investigation) at the appropriate place insert— “ Health and Social Care Information Centre. ”

Commencement Information

I625 Sch. 19 para. 2 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24)

- 3 In Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (bodies of which all members are disqualified) at the appropriate place insert— “ The Health and Social Care Information Centre. ”

Commencement Information

I626 Sch. 19 para. 3 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 25)

- 4 In Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975 (bodies of which all members are disqualified) at the appropriate place insert— “ The Health and Social Care Information Centre. ”

Commencement Information

I627 Sch. 19 para. 4 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Access to Health Records Act 1990 (c. 23)

- 5 In section 11 of the Access to Health Records Act 1990 (interpretation) in the definition of “health service body”, at the end insert—

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

“(f) the Health and Social Care Information Centre;”.

Commencement Information

I628 Sch. 19 para. 5 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Employment Rights Act 1996 (c. 18)

- 6 (1) The Employment Rights Act 1996 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 50 (right to time off for public duties) in subsection (8), after paragraph (ac) (inserted by Schedule 17) insert—
- “(ad) the Health and Social Care Information Centre;”.
- (3) In section 218 (change of employer) in subsection (10), after paragraph (cc) (inserted by Schedule 17) insert—
- “(cd) the Health and Social Care Information Centre;”.

Commencement Information

I629 Sch. 19 para. 6 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Data Protection Act 1998 (c. 29)

- 7 In section 69 of the Data Protection Act 1998 (meaning of “health professional”) in subsection (3), after paragraph (fb) (inserted by Schedule 17) insert—
- “(fc) the Health and Social Care Information Centre;”.

Commencement Information

I630 Sch. 19 para. 7 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Freedom of Information Act 2000 (c. 36)

- 8 In Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (other public bodies and offices: general) at the appropriate place insert— “ The Health and Social Care Information Centre. ”

Commencement Information

I631 Sch. 19 para. 8 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

National Health Service Act 2006 (c. 41)

- 9 (1) The National Health Service Act 2006 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 9 (NHS contracts) in subsection (4), after paragraph (ka) (inserted by Schedule 17) insert—
- “(kb) the Health and Social Care Information Centre;”.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

(3) In section 71 (schemes for losses and liabilities of certain health service bodies) in subsection (2), after paragraph (da) (inserted by Schedule 17) insert—

“(db) the Health and Social Care Information Centre,”.

(4) In section 72 (co-operation between NHS bodies), after subsection (2) (inserted by Schedule 17 to this Act) insert—

“(3) For the purposes of this section, the Health and Social Care Information Centre is an NHS body.”

Commencement Information

I632 Sch. 19 para. 9 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 (c. 42)

10 (1) The National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 is amended as follows.

(2) In section 7 (NHS contracts) in subsection (4), after paragraph (ka) (inserted by Schedule 17) insert—

“(kb) the Health and Social Care Information Centre,”.

Commencement Information

I633 Sch. 19 para. 10 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Health and Social Care Act 2008 (c. 14)

11 In section 64 of the Health and Social Care Act 2008 (power of the Care Quality Commission to require documents and information etc. from certain persons) in subsection (2)—

(a) omit the “or” after paragraph (d), and

(b) after paragraph (e) insert “, or

(f) the Health and Social Care Information Centre.”

Commencement Information

I634 Sch. 19 para. 11 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Health Act 2009 (c. 21)

12 In section 2 of the Health Act 2009 (duty to have regard to the NHS Constitution), in subsection (2) after paragraph (da) (inserted by Schedule 17) insert—

“(db) the Health and Social Care Information Centre,”.

Commencement Information

I635 Sch. 19 para. 12 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Equality Act 2010 (c. 15)

- 13 In Part 1 of Schedule 19 to the Equality Act 2010 (bodies subject to public sector equality duty) at the end of the group of entries for bodies whose functions relate to the health service add— “ The Health and Social Care Information Centre. ”

Commencement Information

I636 Sch. 19 para. 13 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

SCHEDULE 20

Sections 278, 279 and 280

PART 10: CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS AND SAVINGS

PART 1

THE ALCOHOL EDUCATION AND RESEARCH COUNCIL

Consequential amendments

- 1 Omit the entry for the Alcohol Education and Research Council in each of the following—
- (a) Schedule 2 to the Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967, and
 - (b) Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

Commencement Information

I637 Sch. 20 para. 1 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)

- 2 Omit the entry in Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 for the liquidator appointed under section 2 of the Licensing (Alcohol Education and Research) Act 1981.

Commencement Information

I638 Sch. 20 para. 2 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)

- 3 In consequence of the repeal made by section 278(2)—
- (a) in Schedule 2 to the Trustee Act 2000, omit paragraph 40 (and the preceding cross-heading), and
 - (b) in Schedule 3 to the Health Act 2009, omit paragraph 2 (and the preceding cross-heading).

Commencement Information

I639 Sch. 20 para. 3 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Savings

- 4 (1) Anything which is in the process of being done by the Alcohol Education and Research Council under an enactment immediately before abolition may be continued by the Secretary of State.
- (2) Anything which the Council is required to do under an enactment before abolition may, in so far as it has not been done by the Council, be done by the Secretary of State after abolition.
- (3) The Secretary of State must prepare a report on the activities of the Council during the period that begins with the 1 April before abolition and ends with abolition.
- (4) In this paragraph—
“abolition” means the commencement of section 278(1);
“enactment” includes an enactment contained in subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978).

Commencement Information

I640 Sch. 20 para. 4 in force at 1.7.2012 by S.I. 2012/1319, art. 2(3)

PART 2

THE APPOINTMENTS COMMISSION

Consequential amendments

- 5 (1) Omit the entry for the Appointments Commission in each of the following—
(a) Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975,
(b) Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975, and
(c) Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000.
- (2) In consequence of those repeals, in Schedule 8 to the Health Act 2006, omit paragraphs 4, 5 and 45(3) (and the cross-heading preceding each of paragraphs 4 and 5).

Commencement Information

I641 Sch. 20 para. 5 in force at 31.10.2012 by S.I. 2012/1831, art. 2(3)

- 6 Omit paragraph 1A(4) of Schedule 1 (membership of governing Council) to each of the following—
(a) the Medical Act 1983,
(b) the Dentists Act 1984,
(c) the Opticians Act 1989,
(d) the Osteopaths Act 1993, and
(e) the Chiropractors Act 1994.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I642 Sch. 20 para. 6 in force at 31.10.2012 by S.I. 2012/1831, art. 2(3)

- 7 In consequence of the repeal made by section 279(2)—
- (a) in Schedule 1 to the National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006, omit paragraphs 284 to 286,
 - (b) in Schedule 5 to the Health and Social Care Act 2008, omit paragraphs 79 and 80 (and the preceding cross-heading),
 - (c) in Schedule 10 to that Act, omit paragraphs 20 to 23 (and the preceding cross-heading), and
 - (d) in Schedule 3 to the Health Act 2009, omit paragraph 8 (and the preceding cross-heading).

Commencement Information

I643 Sch. 20 para. 7 in force at 31.10.2012 by S.I. 2012/1831, art. 2(3)

Savings

- 8 (1) Anything which is in the process of being done by the Appointments Commission under an enactment immediately before abolition may be continued by the Secretary of State.
- (2) If abolition is to occur at a time other than immediately after the end of a financial year within the meaning of paragraph 22 of Schedule 4 to the Health Act 2006 (accounts), the period that begins with the 1 April before abolition and ends with abolition is to be treated as a financial year for the purposes of that paragraph.
- (3) Despite section 279(2), paragraph 22 of that Schedule is to continue to have effect for the purpose of imposing the duties under sub-paragraphs (2), (3)(b) and (4) of that paragraph; and for that purpose—
- (a) the duty under sub-paragraph (2) of that paragraph, in so far as it has not been discharged by the Commission, must be discharged by the Secretary of State, and
 - (b) the duty under sub-paragraph (3)(b) of that paragraph must be discharged by the Secretary of State.
- (4) Subject to that, anything which the Commission is required to do under an enactment before abolition may, in so far as it has not been done by the Commission, be done by the Secretary of State after abolition.
- (5) In this paragraph—
- “abolition” means the commencement of section 279(1);
 - “enactment” includes an enactment contained in subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978).

Commencement Information

I644 Sch. 20 para. 8 in force at 31.10.2012 by S.I. 2012/1831, art. 2(3)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

PART 3

THE NATIONAL INFORMATION GOVERNANCE BOARD FOR HEALTH AND SOCIAL CARE

Consequential amendments

- 9 (1) Omit the entry for the National Information Governance Board for Health and Social Care in each of the following—
- (a) Schedule 2 to the Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967,
 - (b) Part 2 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975, and
 - (c) Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000.
- (2) In consequence of those repeals, in Schedule 14 to the Health and Social Care Act 2008, omit paragraphs 2 to 4 (and the cross-heading preceding each of those paragraphs).

Commencement Information

I645 Sch. 20 para. 9 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 10 (1) In section 271 of the National Health Service Act 2006 (territorial limit of exercise of functions), in subsection (3), omit paragraph (fa).
- (2) In consequence of that repeal, in Schedule 14 to the Health and Social Care Act 2008, omit paragraph 5 (and the preceding cross-heading).

Commencement Information

I646 Sch. 20 para. 10 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 11 In consequence of the repeal made by section 280(2), omit sections 157(1) and 158 of the Health and Social Care Act 2008.

Commencement Information

I647 Sch. 20 para. 11 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Savings

- 12 (1) Anything which is in the process of being done by the National Information Governance Board for Health and Social Care under an enactment immediately before abolition may be continued by the Secretary of State.
- (2) Despite section 280(2), section 250D of the National Health Service Act 2006 (annual report) is to continue to have effect for the purpose of imposing the duty under subsection (1)(a); and for that purpose—
- (a) if abolition is to occur at a time other than immediately after the end of a reporting year within the meaning of that section, the period that begins with the 1 April before abolition and ends with abolition is to be treated as a reporting year for the purposes of that section, and

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (b) the duty under subsection (1)(a) of that section must be discharged by the Secretary of State.
- (3) Anything which the Board is required to do under an enactment before abolition may, in so far as it has not been done by the Board, be done by the Secretary of State after abolition.
- (4) In this paragraph—
“abolition” means the commencement of section 280(1);
“enactment” includes an enactment contained in subordinate legislation (within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978).

Commencement Information

I648 Sch. 20 para. 12 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

SCHEDULE 21

Section 297

AMENDMENTS RELATING TO RELATIONSHIPS BETWEEN THE HEALTH SERVICES

National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 (c. 29)

- 1 The National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I649 Sch. 21 para. 1 in force at 1.2.2013 for specified purposes by S.I. 2012/2657, art. 2(4)

I650 Sch. 21 para. 1 in force at 1.4.2013 for specified purposes by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

- 2 (1) Section 17A (NHS contracts) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), in paragraph (b) for “(q)” substitute “(s)”.
- (3) In subsection (2)—
- (a) after paragraph (c) insert —
“ca) the Scottish Ministers;”,
- (b) for paragraph (f) substitute—
“(f) Local Health Boards established under section 11 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006;”,
- (c) for paragraph (ff) substitute—
“(fa) Special Health Authorities established under section 28 of the National Health Service Act 2006;
(fb) Special Health Authorities established under section 22 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006;”,
- (d) omit paragraph (h),
- (e) before paragraph (k) insert—
“(ja) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;
(jb) clinical commissioning groups established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006;”,

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (f) in paragraph (k), for “section 5 of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990” substitute “section 18 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006”,
- (g) omit paragraph (ka),
- (h) after paragraph (m) insert—
 - “(ma) the Welsh Ministers;”,
- (i) after paragraph (p) omit the “and,”,
- (j) after paragraph (q) insert—
 - “(r) the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence; and
 - (s) the Health and Social Care Information Centre,”.

(4) After subsection (10) insert—

- “(11) Subsection (12) applies where a person mentioned in subsection (2)(fa), (ja), (jb), (m), (r) or (s) is a party or prospective party to an arrangement or proposed arrangement which—
 - (a) falls within subsection (1); and
 - (b) also falls within the definition of NHS contract in section 9 of the National Health Service Act 2006.
- (12) Subsections (4) to (9) shall apply in relation to that arrangement or proposed arrangement (except in so far as it relates to reserved matters within the meaning of the Scotland Act 1998) with the substitution for references to the Secretary of State of references to the Scottish Ministers and the Secretary of State acting jointly.
- (13) Subsection (14) applies where a person mentioned in subsection (2)(f), (fb), (k) or (ma) is a party or prospective party to an arrangement or proposed arrangement which—
 - (a) falls within subsection (1); and
 - (b) also falls within the definition of NHS contract in section 7 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006.
- (14) Subsections (4) to (9) shall apply in relation to that arrangement or proposed arrangement with the substitution for references to the Secretary of State—
 - (a) in so far as the arrangement or proposed arrangement relates to reserved matters within the meaning of the Scotland Act 1998, of references to the Secretary of State and the Welsh Ministers acting jointly; and
 - (b) for all other purposes, of references to the Scottish Ministers and Welsh Ministers acting jointly.
- (15) Subsection (16) applies (and subsections (12) and (14) do not apply) where a cross-border Special Health Authority is a party or prospective party to an arrangement or proposed arrangement which—
 - (a) falls within subsection (1); and
 - (b) also falls within the definition of NHS contract in section 9 of the National Health Service Act 2006 and the definition of NHS contract in section 7 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006.
- (16) Subsections (4) to (9) shall apply in relation to that arrangement or proposed arrangement (except in so far as it relates to reserved matters within the

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

meaning of the Scotland Act 1998) with the substitution for references to the Secretary of State—

- (a) where the cross-border Special Health Authority is exercising functions in relation to England only, of references to the Secretary of State and the Scottish Ministers acting jointly;
 - (b) where the Authority is exercising functions in relation to Wales only, of references to the Welsh Ministers and the Scottish Ministers acting jointly; and
 - (c) where the Authority is exercising functions in relation to England and Wales, of references to the Secretary of State and the Welsh Ministers acting concurrently with each other and jointly with the Scottish Ministers.
- (17) In subsections (15) and (16), “cross-border Special Health Authority” means a Special Health Authority which is established under the National Health Service Act 2006 and the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 by virtue of—
- (a) paragraph 1(2) of Schedule 2 to the National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006, or
 - (b) the power under section 28 of the National Health Service Act 2006 and the power under section 22 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 being exercised together.”

Commencement Information

- I651** Sch. 21 para. 2(2)(3)(d)(g)(i)(j)(4) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))
I652 Sch. 21 para. 2(3)(a)-(c)(e)(h) in force at 1.2.2013 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)

- 3 (1) Section 17C (personal medical or dental services) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (5)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), for the words from “the Board by” to the end substitute “the Board by a Local Health Board”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (b), for the words from “exercisable by” to “the Authority” substitute “exercisable by a Local Health Board in relation to an agreement made under section 50 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 to be exercisable on behalf of the Local Health Board”.
- (3) In subsection (6), for the first definition substitute—
- ““Local Health Board” means a Local Health Board established under section 11 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006;”.
- (4) In consequence of the amendments made by sub-paragraphs (2) and (3), omit paragraph 12 of Schedule 3 to the National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002, and the cross-heading which precedes it.

Commencement Information

- I653** Sch. 21 para. 3 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

PROSPECTIVE

- 4 In section 17D (persons with whom agreements under section 17C may be made), in subsection (2), in paragraph (b) of the definition of “NHS employee”—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (ii) omit “a Primary Care Trust or”,
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (iii)—
 - (i) after “NHS trust” insert “within the meaning of the National Health Service Act (Wales) 2006”, and
 - (c) omit the words from “and in this paragraph” to the end.

Commencement Information

I654 Sch. 21 para. 4(a)(c) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 3, 7-9](#))

National Health Service Act 2006 (c. 41)

- 5 The National Health Service Act 2006 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I655 Sch. 21 para. 5 in force at 1.2.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), **art. 2(4)**

I656 Sch. 21 para. 5 in force at 1.4.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 6 In section 9 (NHS contracts), in subsection (4)—
- (a) after paragraph (f) insert—
 - “(fa) a Special Health Board constituted under that section,”,
 - and
 - (b) after paragraph (n) insert—
 - “(na) the Scottish Ministers,
 - (nb) Healthcare Improvement Scotland.”.

Commencement Information

I657 Sch. 21 para. 6 in force at 1.2.2013 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), **art. 2(4)**

- 7 After section 10 (provision about NHS contracts entered into by a body in Northern Ireland) insert—

“10A Provision for bodies in Scotland

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where the Scottish Ministers are, or a body mentioned in paragraph (f), (fa), (h), (l) or (nb) of section 9(4) is, a party or prospective party to an arrangement or proposed arrangement which—
 - (a) falls within the definition of NHS contract in section 9(1), and
 - (b) also falls within the definition of NHS contract in section 17A of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978.
- (2) Subsections (5) to (13) of section 9 apply in relation to the arrangement or proposed arrangement (except in so far as it relates to reserved matters within

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

the meaning of the Scotland Act 1998) with the substitution for references to the Secretary of State of references to the Secretary of State and the Scottish Ministers acting jointly.

- (3) Subsection (4) applies (and subsection (2) does not apply) where a cross-border Special Health authority is a party or prospective party to an arrangement or proposed arrangement which—
- (a) falls within the definition of NHS contract in section 9(1), and
 - (b) also falls within the definition of NHS contract in section 17A of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 and the definition of NHS contract in section 7(1) of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006.
- (4) Subsections (5) to (13) of section 9 apply in relation to that arrangement or proposed arrangement (except in so far as it relates to reserved matters within the meaning of the Scotland Act 1998) with the substitution for references to the Secretary of State—
- (a) where the cross-border Special Health Authority is exercising functions in relation to England only, of references to the Secretary of State and the Scottish Ministers acting jointly; and
 - (b) where the Authority is exercising functions in relation to England and Wales, of references to the Secretary of State and the Welsh Ministers acting concurrently with each other and jointly with the Scottish Ministers.
- (5) In subsections (3) and (4), “cross-border Special Health Authority” means a Special Health Authority which is established under the National Health Service Act 2006 and the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 by virtue of—
- (a) paragraph 1(2) of Schedule 2 to the National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006, or
 - (b) the power under section 28 of the National Health Service Act 2006 and the power under section 22 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 being exercised together.”

Commencement Information

I658 Sch. 21 para. 7 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

PROSPECTIVE

- 8 (1) In section 66 (intervention orders), for subsection (1) substitute—
- “(1) This section applies to—
- (a) NHS trusts, and
 - (b) Special Health Authorities.”
- (2) Until the commencement of section 33 of this Act, subsection (1) of section 66 of the National Health Service Act 2006 has effect as if it included a reference to Strategic Health Authorities.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (3) Until the commencement of section 34 of this Act, subsection (1) of section 66 of the National Health Service Act 2006 has effect as if it included a reference to Primary Care Trusts.

PROSPECTIVE

- 9 (1) Section 67 (effect of intervention orders) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) in paragraph (a) omit “or Local Health Board, or a member of the board of directors of an NHS trust”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (b)—
 - (i) omit “or Local Health Board,” and
 - (ii) in that paragraph omit “, or an executive director of an NHS trust”.
- (3) In subsection (7)(a) omit “(or in the case of an NHS trust to the membership of its board of directors)”.

PROSPECTIVE

- 10 (1) In section 68 (default powers), for subsection (1) substitute—
- “(1) This section applies to—
- (a) NHS trusts established under section 25, and
 - (b) Special Health Authorities.”
- (2) Until the commencement of section 33 of this Act, subsection (1) of section 68 of the National Health Service Act 2006 has effect as if it included a reference to Strategic Health Authorities.
- (3) Until the commencement of section 34 of this Act, subsection (1) of section 68 of the National Health Service Act 2006 has effect as if it included a reference to Primary Care Trusts.
- 11 In section 78 (directed partnership arrangements), in subsection (3)—
- (a) in paragraph (c) after “NHS trusts” insert “established under section 25”, and
 - (b) omit paragraph (d).

Commencement Information

I659 Sch. 21 para. 11 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 (c. 42)

- 12 The National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 is amended as follows.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

- I660** Sch. 21 para. 12 in force at 1.2.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)
I661 Sch. 21 para. 12 in force at 1.4.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

PROSPECTIVE

- 13 In section 7 (NHS contracts), in subsection (4)—
- (a) omit paragraph (a),
 - (b) omit paragraph (b),
 - (c) before paragraph (c) insert—
 - “(ba) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
 - (bb) a clinical commissioning group,”
 - (d) after paragraph (f) insert—
 - “(fa) a Special Health Board constituted under that section,”
 - (e) omit paragraph (j), and
 - (f) after paragraph (n) insert—
 - “(na) the Scottish Ministers,
 - (nb) Healthcare Improvement Scotland,”

Commencement Information

- I662** Sch. 21 para. 13(a)(b) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))
I663 Sch. 21 para. 13(c)-(f) in force at 1.2.2013 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)

- 14 After section 8 insert—

“8A Provision for bodies in Scotland

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where the Scottish Ministers are, or a body mentioned in paragraph (f), (fa), (h), (l) or (nb) of section 7(4) is, a party or prospective party to an arrangement or proposed arrangement which—
 - (a) falls within the definition of NHS contract in section 7(1), and
 - (b) also falls within the definition of NHS contract in section 17A of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978.
- (2) Subsections (5) to (13) of section 7 apply in relation to the arrangement or proposed arrangement with the substitution for references to the Welsh Ministers—
 - (a) in so far as the arrangement or proposed arrangement relates to reserved matters within the meaning of the Scotland Act 1998, of references to the Welsh Ministers and the Secretary of State acting jointly, and
 - (b) for all other purposes, of references to the Welsh Ministers and the Scottish Ministers acting jointly.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- (3) Subsection (4) applies (and subsection (2) does not apply) where a cross-border Special Health Authority is a party or prospective party to an arrangement or proposed arrangement which—
- (a) falls within the definition of NHS contract in section 7(1), and
 - (b) also falls within the definition of NHS contract in section 17A of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 and the definition of NHS contract in section 9(1) of the National Health Service Act 2006.
- (4) Subsections (5) to (13) of section 7 apply in relation to the arrangement or proposed arrangement (except in so far as it relates to reserved matters within the meaning of the Scotland Act 1998) with the substitution for references to the Welsh Ministers—
- (a) where the cross-border Special Health Authority is exercising functions in relation to Wales only, of references to the Welsh Ministers and the Scottish Ministers acting jointly, and
 - (b) where the Authority is exercising functions in relation to England and Wales, of references to the Welsh Ministers and the Secretary of State acting concurrently with each other and jointly with the Scottish Ministers.
- (5) In subsections (3) and (4), “cross-border Special Health Authority” means a Special Health Authority which is established under the National Health Service Act 2006 and the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 by virtue of—
- (a) paragraph 1(2) of Schedule 2 to the National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006, or
 - (b) the power under section 28 of the National Health Service Act 2006 and the power under section 22 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 being exercised together.”

Commencement Information

I664 Sch. 21 para. 14 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 15 In section 10 (Welsh Ministers' arrangements with other bodies), in subsection (4) omit paragraph (b).

Commencement Information

I665 Sch. 21 para. 15 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 16 In section 13 (exercise of Local Health Board functions), in subsection (3)—
- (a) omit paragraph (a), and
 - (b) before paragraph (b) insert—
 - “(aa) the National Health Service Commissioning Board,
 - (ab) clinical commissioning groups,”.

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Commencement Information

I666 Sch. 21 para. 16 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 17 In section 17 (plans for improving health etc), in subsection (6)—
- (a) in paragraph (g)—
- (i) after “between” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, clinical commissioning groups,”
 - (ii) omit “Strategic Health Authorities,”
 - (iii) omit “Primary Care Trusts,” and
 - (iv) for “section 24 of the National Health Service Act 2006 (c. 41)” substitute “the preparation of joint health and wellbeing strategies under section 116A of the Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007”, and
- (b) in paragraph (h)—
- (i) after “provision by” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, clinical commissioning groups,”
 - (ii) omit “Strategic Health Authorities,”
 - (iii) omit “Primary Care Trusts”, and
 - (iv) for “section 24 of the National Health Service Act 2006 (c. 41)” substitute “joint health and wellbeing strategies under section 116A of the Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007”.

Commencement Information

I667 Sch. 21 para. 17 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 18 In section 22 (special health authorities), omit subsection (6).

Commencement Information

I668 Sch. 21 para. 18 in force at 1.2.2013 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)

- 19 In section 26 (intervention orders), in subsection (1) after “other than” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, clinical commissioning groups and”.

Commencement Information

I669 Sch. 21 para. 19 in force at 1.2.2013 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)

- 20 In section 27 (effect of intervention orders), in subsection (1)—
- (a) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” in each place it occurs, and
 - (b) omit “Primary Care Trust,” in each place it occurs.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I670 Sch. 21 para. 20 in force at 1.2.2013 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)

- 21 In section 28 (default powers), in subsection (1) after “other than” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, clinical commissioning groups and”.

Commencement Information

I671 Sch. 21 para. 21 in force at 1.2.2013 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)

- 22 In section 34 (power of local authorities to make payments), in subsection (1)—
- (a) after “payments to” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group”;
 - (b) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”; and
 - (c) omit “a Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I672 Sch. 21 para. 22 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 23 In section 36 (directed partnership arrangements), in subsection (3)—
- (a) omit paragraph (a), and
 - (b) omit paragraph (b).

Commencement Information

I673 Sch. 21 para. 23 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 24 (1) Section 38 (supply of goods and services by the Welsh Ministers) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3)—
 - (a) in paragraph (a) omit “or by a Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (b) omit “, a Primary Care Trust”.
 - (3) In subsection (6) omit “, a Primary Care Trust” in each place it occurs.
 - (4) In subsection (7), in paragraph (d) omit “, Primary Care Trusts”.

Commencement Information

I674 Sch. 21 para. 24 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 25 In section 39 (conditions of supply under section 38), in subsection (3), omit “Primary Care Trusts”.

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I675 Sch. 21 para. 25 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

26 In section 41 (duty to provide primary medical services), omit subsection (4).

Commencement Information

I676 Sch. 21 para. 26 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

27 (1) Section 51 (persons with whom agreements for provision of primary medical services may be made) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)(g), omit “Primary Care Trust or”.

(3) In subsection (3), in paragraph (b) of the definition of “NHS employee”, omit “Primary Care Trust or”.

Commencement Information

I677 Sch. 21 para. 27 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

28 In section 56 (primary dental services), omit subsection (4).

Commencement Information

I678 Sch. 21 para. 28 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

29 (1) Section 65 (persons with whom agreements for provision of primary dental services may be made) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)(g), omit “Primary Care Trust or”.

(3) In subsection (3), in paragraph (b) of the definition of “NHS employee”, omit “Primary Care Trust or”.

Commencement Information

I679 Sch. 21 para. 29 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

30 In section 106 (provision about regulations under section 105), in subsection (2)—

(a) omit paragraph (e), and

(b) after paragraph (e) insert—

“(f) a list corresponding to a list mentioned in any of paragraphs (a) to (d) prepared by the National Health Service Commissioning Board under or by virtue of the National Health Service Act 2006,”

Commencement Information

I680 Sch. 21 para. 30 in force at 1.4.2013 by S.I. 2013/160, art. 2(2) (with arts. 7-9)

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

- 31 (1) Section 115 (national disqualification) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) omit paragraph (e),
 - (b) after that paragraph insert—
 - “(f) the lists corresponding to the lists mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (d) prepared by the National Health Service Commissioning Board under or by virtue of the National Health Service Act 2006,”
 - (c) after “such lists prepared by each Local Health Board” insert “and the National Health Service Commissioning Board”, and
 - (d) omit “and each Primary Care Trust”.
- (3) In subsection (6)—
- (a) in paragraph (a)—
 - (i) omit “or Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (ii) before “may include” insert “or the National Health Service Commissioning Board”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (b)—
 - (i) omit “and each Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (ii) after “included” insert “, and the National Health Service Commissioning Board,”.

Commencement Information

I681 Sch. 21 para. 31 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 32 In section 131 (payment of travelling expenses), in paragraph (c) omit “, and, in such cases as may be prescribed, to a Primary Care Trust,”.

Commencement Information

I682 Sch. 21 para. 32 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 33 In section 144 (persons and bodies about which provision is made), in subsection (2) for “section 22(6)” substitute “section 206(1)”.

Commencement Information

I683 Sch. 21 para. 33 in force at 1.2.2013 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), **art. 2(4)**

- 34 In section 161 (transfers of trust property), in subsection (2)(c)—
- ^{F88}(a)
 - (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust,”

Textual Amendments

F88 Sch. 21 para. 34(a) omitted (17.6.2021) by virtue of [NHS \(Charitable Trusts Etc\) Act 2016 \(c. 10\)](#), s. 5(1), [Sch. 1 para. 16\(b\)](#); [S.I. 2021/712](#), reg. 3(c)

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

Commencement Information

I684 Sch. 21 para. 34 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 35 (1) Section 162 (transfer of functions and property to or from special trustees) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) after the first “by” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board, a clinical commissioning group,”, and
- (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust,”.
- (3) In subsection (3)(a)—
- ^{F89}(a)
- (b) omit “a Primary Care Trust,”.

Textual Amendments

F89 Sch. 21 para. 35(3)(a) omitted (17.6.2021) by virtue of [NHS \(Charitable Trusts Etc\) Act 2016 \(c. 10\)](#), s. 5(1), [Sch. 1 para. 16\(b\)](#); [S.I. 2021/712](#), reg. 3(c)

Commencement Information

I685 Sch. 21 para. 35 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 36 In section 181 (payment for medical examination before application for admission to hospital under the Mental Health Act), in subsection (2)(b)—
- (a) omit “a Primary Care Trust,”, and
- (b) before “NHS trust” insert “an”.

Commencement Information

I686 Sch. 21 para. 36 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 37 In section 197 (university clinical teaching and research), in subsection (2)(a)—
- (a) after “exercisable by” insert “the National Health Service Commissioning Board,”,
- (b) after “a” insert “clinical commissioning group,”,
- (c) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”, and
- (d) omit “Primary Care Trust,”.

Commencement Information

I687 Sch. 21 para. 37 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 38 (1) In section 206 (interpretation), in subsection (1)—
- (a) before the definition of “dental practitioner” insert—
- ““clinical commissioning group” means a body established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006,”
- (b) after the definition of “modifications” insert—

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

““NHS body” means—

- (a) a Special Health Authority,
 - (b) an NHS trust,
 - (c) an NHS foundation trust,
 - (d) a Local Health Board,
 - (e) the National Health Service Commissioning Board, and
 - (f) a clinical commissioning group.”
- (c) omit the definition of “Primary Care Trust”, and
- (d) omit the definition of “Strategic Health Authority”.

- (2) Until the commencement of section 34 of this Act, the definition of “NHS body” in section 206(1) of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006 has effect as if it included a reference to a Primary Care Trust.

Commencement Information

I688 Sch. 21 para. 38(1)(a)(b)(2) in force at 1.2.2013 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#) (with [art. 13](#))

I689 Sch. 21 para. 38(1)(c)(d) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 39 In Schedule 2 (Local Health Boards), in paragraph 9—
- (a) omit “Strategic Health Authorities and”,
 - (b) omit “under paragraph 7(8) of Schedule 2 to the National Health Service Act 2006 (c. 41) and”, and
 - (c) for “that Act” substitute “the National Health Service Act 2006”.

Commencement Information

I690 Sch. 21 para. 39 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 40 (1) Schedule 3 (NHS trusts) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 5(1)(f) omit “Primary Care Trust”.
- (3) In paragraph 6—
- (a) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” in each place it occurs, and
 - (b) omit “, Primary Care Trust” in each place it occurs.
- (4) In paragraph 7, in sub-paragraph (3) omit “Strategic Health Authority”.
- (5) In paragraph 8 omit “, Primary Care Trust” in each place it occurs.
- (6) In paragraph 9—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)—
 - (i) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (ii) omit “a Primary Care Trust,”,
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (3)—
 - (i) omit “Strategic Health Authority,”, and
 - (ii) omit “Primary Care Trust,”,
 - (c) in sub-paragraph (6)—
 - (i) omit “a Strategic Health Authority,”, and

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

- (ii) omit “a Primary Care Trust,” and
- (d) in sub-paragraph (7)—
 - (i) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” in each place it occurs,
 - (ii) omit “or belong to a Primary Care Trust”, and
 - (iii) omit “Primary Care Trust”.
- (7) In paragraph 18—
 - (a) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” and
 - (b) omit “Primary Care Trust”.
- (8) In paragraph 30—
 - (a) omit “Strategic Health Authority,” and
 - (b) omit “Primary Care Trust”.

Commencement Information

I691 Sch. 21 para. 40 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 41 (1) Schedule 5 (Special Health Authorities) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 3—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (8)—
 - (i) omit “or to a Strategic Health Authority”, and
 - (ii) omit “, a Strategic Health Authority”, and
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (12)—
 - (i) in paragraph (a) omit “or of a Strategic Health Authority”, and
 - (ii) in paragraph (b) omit “or by a Strategic Health Authority”.
- (3) In paragraph 13, for “a Strategic Health Authority” substitute “the National Health Service Commissioning Board”.

Commencement Information

I692 Sch. 21 para. 41 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

- 42 (1) Schedule 10 (further provision about Community Health Councils) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 2—
- (a) omit “, Strategic Health Authorities” in each place it occurs, and
 - (b) omit “, Primary Care Trusts” in each place it occurs.
- (3) In paragraph 3—
- (a) omit paragraph (b), and
 - (b) omit paragraph (c).

Commencement Information

I693 Sch. 21 para. 42 in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [arts. 7-9](#))

Changes to legislation: *Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes*

Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1991 (No. 194 (N.I. 1))

- 43 (1) Article 8 of the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1991 (health and social services contracts) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph (2)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (g)—
- (i) omit paragraph (i),
- (ii) omit paragraph (ii), and
- (iii) omit paragraph (iii),
- (b) after that sub-paragraph insert—
- “(ga) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;
- (gb) clinical commissioning groups established under section 14D of the National Health Service Act 2006;
- (gc) Special Health Authorities established under section 28 of that Act;
- (gd) Special Health Authorities established under section 22 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006;
- (ge) Local Health Boards established under section 11 of that Act;
- (gf) NHS trusts established under section 18 of that Act;”
- (c) in sub-paragraph (h) after paragraph (i) insert—
- “(ia) Special Health Boards;”
- (d) after sub-paragraph (h) insert—
- “(ha) Healthcare Improvement Scotland;”
- (e) omit sub-paragraph (i), and
- (f) before sub-paragraph (j) insert—
- “(ia) the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence;
- (ib) the Health and Social Care Information Centre;”
- (3) In paragraph (10) for “paragraph 2(g), (h), (i) or (j)” substitute “any of sub-paragraphs (g) to (gf), (h), (ha), (ia), (ib) and (j) of paragraph (2)”.

Commencement Information

I694 Sch. 21 para. 43(1) in force at 1.2.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), **art. 2(4)**

I695 Sch. 21 para. 43(1) in force at 1.4.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

I696 Sch. 21 para. 43(2)(a)(i)(ii)(f) in force at 1.4.2013 by [S.I. 2013/160](#), **art. 2(2)** (with [arts. 7-9](#))

I697 Sch. 21 para. 43(2)(b) in force at 1.2.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), **art. 2(4)**

I698 Sch. 21 para. 43(2)(c)-(e)(3) in force at 1.2.2013 by [S.I. 2012/2657](#), **art. 2(4)** (with [art. 14](#))

Changes to legislation: Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details) View outstanding changes

^{F90}SCHEDULE 22

Section 300(2)

PROPERTY TRANSFER SCHEMES

Textual Amendments

F90 Sch. 22 omitted (1.7.2022) by virtue of Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), ss. 89(1)(c), 186(6); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

^{F91}SCHEDULE 23

Section 300(3)

STAFF TRANSFER SCHEMES

Textual Amendments

F91 Sch. 23 omitted (1.7.2022) by virtue of Health and Care Act 2022 (c. 31), ss. 89(1)(c), 186(6); S.I. 2022/734, reg. 2(a), Sch. (with regs. 13, 29, 30)

Changes to legislation:

Health and Social Care Act 2012 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 20 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.

[View outstanding changes](#)

Changes and effects yet to be applied to :

- s. 72(2)(c) omitted by [S.I. 2019/93 Sch. 1 para. 13](#) (This amendment not applied to legislation.gov.uk. Sch. 1 para. 13 substituted immediately before IP completion day by S.I. 2020/1343, regs. 1(1), 25)
- s. 72(2)(c)(d) omitted by virtue of S.I. 2019/93, Sch. 1 para. 13(2) (as substituted) by [S.I. 2019/1245 reg. 28](#) (This amendment not applied to legislation.gov.uk. The affecting statutory instrument has no legal effect. It was made under a procedure which meant that it ceased to have effect 28 days after signing unless it was debated and approved in Parliament within that time. It was not debated and approved within 28 days, so it has expired with no effect.)
- s. 72(2)(d) omitted by [S.I. 2019/93 Sch. 1 para. 13](#) (This amendment not applied to legislation.gov.uk. Sch. 1 para. 13 substituted immediately before IP completion day by S.I. 2020/1343, regs. 1(1), 25)
- s. 88 omitted by [2012 c. 7 s. 180\(3\)](#)
- s. 174(2) omitted by [2012 c. 7 Sch. 14 para. 13\(2\)](#)
- s. 176(2) omitted by [2012 c. 7 Sch. 14 para. 15\(7\)](#)
- s. 176(8) omitted by [2012 c. 7 Sch. 14 para. 18\(5\)](#)
- s. 176(9) omitted by [2012 c. 7 Sch. 14 para. 19\(4\)](#)
- s. 177(1) omitted by [2012 c. 7 Sch. 14 para. 20\(2\)](#)
- s. 177(3) omitted by [2012 c. 7 Sch. 14 para. 22\(5\)](#)
- s. 178(1) omitted by [2012 c. 7 Sch. 14 para. 23\(5\)](#)
- s. 178(3) omitted by [2012 c. 7 Sch. 14 para. 24\(4\)](#)
- s. 250(3) word substituted by [2022 c. 31 s. 95\(2\)\(b\)](#)
- s. 250(5) omitted by [2022 c. 31 s. 95\(2\)\(c\)](#)
- s. 250(7) words inserted by [2022 c. 31 s. 95\(2\)\(e\)\(i\)](#)
- s. 250(7) words omitted by [2022 c. 31 s. 95\(2\)\(e\)\(ii\)](#)
- s. 251C(7) substituted by [2022 c. 31 s. 95\(4\)\(b\)](#)
- s. 253(3) words inserted by [S.I. 2023/98 Sch. para. 17\(5\)\(e\)](#) (This amendment comes in force at the same time as 2016 c. 9, s. 2 comes into force)
- s. 259(1)(a) word omitted by [2022 c. 31 s. 98\(a\)](#)
- s. 259(1)(b) words substituted by [S.I. 2023/98 Sch. para. 17\(11\)\(a\)\(iii\)](#) (This amendment comes in force at the same time as 2022 c. 31, s. 98 comes into force)
- s. 259(2) words substituted by [2022 c. 31 s. 98\(c\)](#)
- s. 259(4) omitted by [2022 c. 31 s. 98\(d\)](#)
- s. 259(5) words inserted by [2022 c. 31 s. 98\(e\)](#)
- s. 259(7) omitted by [2022 c. 31 s. 98\(f\)](#)
- s. 259(9) words inserted by [2022 c. 31 s. 98\(g\)](#)
- Sch. 5 para. 78 omitted by [2018 anaw 2 Sch. 1 para. 6\(q\)](#)
- Sch. 5 para. 79 omitted by [2018 anaw 2 Sch. 1 para. 6\(q\)](#)
- Sch. 10 para. 10(2A)(b) words substituted by S.I. 2019/93, Sch. 1 para. 13(4) (as substituted) by [S.I. 2019/1245 reg. 28](#) (This amendment not applied to legislation.gov.uk. The affecting statutory instrument has no legal effect. It was made under a procedure which meant that it ceased to have effect 28 days after signing unless it was debated and approved in Parliament within that time. It was not debated and approved within 28 days, so it has expired with no effect.)
- Sch. 14 para. 15(4) words substituted by [2014 c. 23 s. 85\(15\)\(a\)](#)
- specified provision(s) amendment to earlier commencing SI 2012/1831 art. 10 by [S.I. 2012/2657 art. 15](#)

Changes and effects yet to be applied to the whole Act associated Parts and Chapters:

Whole provisions yet to be inserted into this Act (including any effects on those provisions):

- Pt. 9 Ch. 1B inserted by [2022 c. 31 s. 96](#)
- s. 102(4)(ba) inserted by S.I. 2019/93, Sch. 1 para. 13(3) (as substituted) by [S.I. 2019/1245 reg. 28](#) (This amendment not applied to [legislation.gov.uk](#). The affecting statutory instrument has no legal effect. It was made under a procedure which meant that it ceased to have effect 28 days after signing unless it was debated and approved in Parliament within that time. It was not debated and approved within 28 days, so it has expired with no effect.)
- s. 105(3A)(3B) inserted by [2013 c. 24 Sch. 14 para. 21](#)
- s. 106(3A)(3B) inserted by [2013 c. 24 Sch. 14 para. 22](#)
- s. 250(2)-(2B) substituted for s. 250(2) by [2022 c. 31 s. 95\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- s. 250(6)-(6D) substituted for s. 250(6) by [2022 c. 31 s. 95\(2\)\(d\)](#)
- s. 251251ZA substituted for s. 251 by [2022 c. 31 s. 95\(3\)](#)
- s. 251C(6A) inserted by [2022 c. 31 s. 95\(4\)\(a\)](#)
- s. 259(1)(aa)(b) substituted for s. 259(1)(b) by [2022 c. 31 s. 98\(b\)](#)
- s. 259(1)(aa) words substituted by [S.I. 2023/98 Sch. para. 17\(11\)\(a\)\(iii\)](#) (This amendment comes in force at the same time as [2022 c. 31, s. 98](#) comes into force)
- s. 259(10A)(10B) inserted by [2022 c. 31 s. 98\(h\)](#)
- s. 304(5)(ja) inserted by [2022 c. 31 s. 95\(5\)](#)